

## Introduction

This document describes how the TEI standard was customized for the project *Lectures that Link*. The project focuses on building a data collection of Digital Humanities lecture series hosted by European institutions between 2014 and early 2025. The primary emphasis is on the lecture series themselves, the individual lectures within these series, and the speakers involved. Detailed descriptions of who these data were collected and encoded in TEI are provided in the following sections, with examples included in the running text.

## Data Sources and Strategy for Data Selection and Capture

All data used in this project was exclusively sourced from publicly accessible websites, ensuring that only freely available information was included. Data behind authentication barriers, such as those requiring login credentials, was deliberately excluded from the collection process.

In addition to textual information about the lecture series found on individual websites, additional digital materials related to the events were incorporated into the project. These sources were accessed via hyperlinks found on the websites and include presentations, blog posts, related articles, and audiovisual content, such as videos.

While every effort has been made to ensure the dataset is comprehensive within the scope of the project, it does not claim to be exhaustive or definitive. Instead, it serves as a solid foundation for both the current and future analyses.

## TEI Encoding of Lecture Series

### ***Hierarchical Organization: Series, Terms, and Lectures***

All lecture series are recorded in the <listEvent> element, which is located within <body>, a sub-element of <text>. To accurately reflect the inherent structure of lecture series, the XML is organized hierarchically. The term *lecture series* implies a three-tiered structure:

- The overarching series, representing the general lecture program.
- Individual editions or rounds of a series, typically aligned with academic semesters or other specific time periods.
- Individual lectures, which form the lowest hierarchical level, with most information.

To represent this hierarchy, the following approach is used:

Each lecture series is recorded within an `<event>` element, with the *type* attribute set to the value *lecture-series*. Additionally, the *where* attribute references the ID of the location where the series is hosted:

```
<event type="lecture-series"
  where="#rostock" xml:id="ls10">
  <eventName xml:lang="de">Digital Humanities im Fokus: Methoden, Anwen-
  dungen und
    Perspektiven</eventName>
  <eventName xml:lang="en">Digital Humanities in Focus: Methods, Applicati-
  ons, and
    Perspectives</eventName>
</event>
```

The `<event>` element contains an `<eventName>` sub-element, which records the original name of the series. The *xml:lang* attribute specifies the language of the lecture series name. If official translations exist, multiple `<eventName>` elements may be listed sequentially, as can be seen above.

Each lecture series consists of at least one, but usually multiple `<event>` elements, each representing an instance of the lecture series, for instance, an academic term in which the series took place. These `<event>` elements include a *type* attribute with the value *lecture-series-term*, as well as the attributes *from* and *to* indicating the term's duration (year and month):

```
<event from="2023-04" to="2024-07"
  type="lecture-series-term" xml:id="ls10_t1">
  <eventName xml:lang="de">Sommersemester 2023</eventName>
  <ptr target="https://web.archive.org/web/20241114133706/https://
  www.germanistik.uni-rostock.de/forschung/digital-humanities/rosdh/
  ringvorlesung/2023/"
  type="programme"/>
</event>
```

If a consolidated program overview is available for a given term, a `<ptr>` element is included after the `<eventName>` element. The *type* attribute of `<ptr>` is set to the value *programme* to indicate its purpose.

After these term-level `<event>` elements, individual lectures are recorded, as explained in the following sections.

## **Encoding Individual Lectures**

A individual lecture is recorded as an `<event>` element with the attribute *type* (with the value *lecture*) and with the attribute *when*, which specifies the date of the event in the format year-month-day. The structure of the content within each `<event>` element remains consistent across all lectures. Therefore, it is described in the following subsections from top to bottom, using the example below:

```
<event type="lecture" when="2024-12-02"
  xml:id="ls10_t4_l7">
```

<eventName xml:lang="de">KI generiert Texte – Wie? und Warum? – Nachdenken eines

Informations- und Kommunikationswissenschaftlers</eventName>

<note type="abstract" xml:lang="de">

<p>Texte sind allgegenwärtig und es liegt nahe, Textproduktion zu automatisieren.

Texte können (über)lebenswichtig sein, daher ist ein Nachdenken darüber, wie Texte

funktionieren und was sie mit uns und wir mit ihnen machen, notwendig.

KI-generierte Texte verändern die Textwelt, ohne dass wir es notwendigerweise

bemerken. Die Perspektive der Sprach- und Kommunikationswissenschaft kann auf

Punkte hinweisen, worüber nachzudenken lohnen könnte.</p>

<p>Hier knüpft der Vortrag des Informatikers Clemens Cap an. Er schildert, wie große

Sprachmodelle wie beispielsweise ChatGPT heute aufgebaut sind. Daraus ergeben sich

unmittelbar die derzeitigen Fähigkeiten und Grenzen solcher Systeme. Der Kreis zum

Vortrag von Wolfgang Sucharowski schließt sich nun, wenn wir erkennen, dass seine

Beobachtungen keine Spekulationen sondern unmittelbare Konsequenzen aus der

Architektur solcher Systeme sind.</p>

</note>

<note type="keywords">

<term corresp="#german-studies #computer-science" type="discipline"/>

<term corresp="https://vocabs.dariah.eu/tadirah/commenting https://vocabs.dariah.eu/tadirah/machineLearning" type="topic"/>

</note>

<note type="realization">

<term type="speech">in person</term>

<term type="audience">hybrid</term>

</note>

<ptr target="https://web.archive.org/web/20241210104406/https://www.germanistik.uni-rostock.de/forschung/digital-humanities/rosdh/ringvorlesung/2024-25/n/ki-generiert-texte-wie-und-warum-nachdenken-eines-informations-und-kommunikationswissenschaftlers-202261/" type="programme"/>

<ptr target="https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.14525161" type="slides"/>

<listPerson>

<person corresp="#cap\_clemens" role="speaker">

<name>

```

    <roleName type="title">Prof. Dr.</roleName>
  </name>
  <affiliation corresp="#uni-rostock"/>
</person>
<person corresp="#sucharowski_wolfgang"
  role="speaker">
  <name>
    <roleName type="title">Prof. Dr.</roleName>
  </name>
  <affiliation corresp="#uni-rostock"/>
</person>
</listPerson>
<org corresp="#uni-rostock"
  role="host-institution"/>
</event> [...]
<org corresp="#henny-krahmer_ulrike #alvares-freire_fernanda #renz_erik"
  role="organizer"/>

```

## Titles and Abstracts

At the beginning of each entry, the lecture title is recorded using an `<eventName>` element. The language of the title is specified via the `xml:lang` attribute.

Directly below the title, the abstract of the lecture follows. This is captured within a `<note>` element, which is characterized by the `type` attribute set to the value `abstract`. Additionally, the `xml:lang` attribute specifies the language of the abstract.

```

<eventName xml:lang="de">KI generiert Texte - Wie? und Warum? - Nachdenken eines
Informations- und Kommunikationswissenschaftlers</eventName>
<note type="abstract" xml:lang="de">
  <p>Texte sind allgegenwärtig und es liegt nahe, Textproduktion zu automatisieren.
  Texte können (über)lebenswichtig sein, daher ist ein Nachdenken darüber, wie Texte
  funktionieren und was sie mit uns und wir mit ihnen machen, notwendig.
  KI-generierte Texte verändern die Textwelt, ohne dass wir es notwendigerweise
  bemerken. Die Perspektive der Sprach- und Kommunikationswissenschaft kann auf
  Punkte hinweisen, worüber nachzudenken lohnen könnte.</p>
  <p>Hier knüpft der Vortrag des Informatikers Clemens Cap an. Er schildert,
  wie große
  Sprachmodelle wie beispielsweise ChatGPT heute aufgebaut sind. Daraus ergeben sich
  unmittelbar die derzeitigen Fähigkeiten und Grenzen solcher Systeme. Der
  Kreis zum

```

Vortrag von Wolfgang Sucharowski schließt sich nun, wenn wir erkennen, dass seine

Beobachtungen keine Spekulationen, sondern unmittelbare Konsequenzen aus der

Architektur solcher Systeme sind.</p>

</note>

As the example above already shows, the abstract text itself is recorded within one or more <p> elements. If a list is included within the abstract, a <list> element is used, with individual list items represented by <item> elements.

If the abstract contains formatting elements such as bold, italics, or hyperlinks, these are not explicitly marked up.

If an abstract is available, it is recorded within the <note type="abstract"> tag. If no abstract is provided, the content of the note is set to "not found":

<note type="abstract" xml:lang="en">not found</note>

## Keywords

Each recorded lecture is assigned keywords by the encoders to be able to analyze the distribution of disciplines, methods and topics across the lectures and lecture series. That is, the keywords are not collected from the websites of the lecture series but they are added by the editors of this data collection.

The keywords are stored inside of a <note> element, characterized by the attribute *type* with the value *keywords*. Within this <note> element, there are two <term> elements:

- One with <type="discipline">, specifying the academic discipline or disciplines covered by the talk.
- One with <type="topics-llm">, indicating the topics of the talk.

<note type="keywords">

<term corresp="#literary-studies"

type="discipline"/>

<term type="topics-llm">evolution, cultural change, computational methods, literature trends, causal mechanisms</term>

</note>

In case that there is more than one discipline, it is collected in the *corresp* attribute of the same <term> element. We opted for this (instead of using an individual <term> element for each keyword) to facilitate later processing of the data and for a more compact encoding of the information. For the disciplines, we use a pre-defined list that we created on our own. The topics were generated with a script calling an LLM.

Both discipline and topic assignments are based on the lecture content. This classification relies on the abstract and title of the lecture. Since every lecture has a title but not necessarily an abstract, classification is always possible. However, a longer title or the presence of an abstract allows for a more precise categorization.

## Realization (Lecture Modality)

The lecture modality is recorded in the `<note type="realization">` tag, specifying whether the lecture was held in person, hybrid, or online. The `<note>` element contains two `<term>` sub-elements that define the modality separately for speakers and audience members. These `<term>` elements use the *type* attribute to distinguish between the modality of the speech and of the audience:

- `<term type="speech">`: Describes how the speakers delivered the lecture.
- `<term type="audience">`: Describes how the audience attended the lecture.

```
<note type="realization">  
  <term type="speech">in person</term>  
  <term type="audience">hybrid</term>  
</note>
```

The values for these elements are standardized to ensure consistency in data representation. The possible values are:

- *in person*: All participants (speakers or audience) were physically present at the lecture venue.
- *hybrid*: At least one participant (speaker or audience member) joined remotely, while others were present in person.
- *online*: All participants attended virtually; no one was physically present at the venue.

If a lecture was canceled, a fourth value, *canceled*, is used. In this case, as shown in the example below, the `<term type="audience">` tag is omitted since no audience attended:

*canceled*

## Speakers, Titles, and Affiliation

The speakers of a lecture are recorded in a `<listPerson>` element. Each speaker is described using a `<person>` element with a *corresp* attribute that links to the corresponding person entry in the TEI header. The academic title (if provided) is stored within a `<roleName type="title">` element inside of the `<name>` element. The speaker's affiliation is captured within an `<affiliation>` element, referencing the corresponding institution, which is encoded in the TEI header. The information about the speakers, their affiliations, and the institutions is encoded in two places for the following reasons: on the one hand, we aim to have a centralized list of people and institutions in the TEI header, to which we can refer from individual events. On the other hand, the affiliations of people can change over time and the same is true for their titles. One person might not have a title at the moment of one event, but might have a title at another event later on, for instance, if someone completed his or her PhD. Therefore, information about the current affiliation of a speaker at the moment of the event and about the current title that a person has when the

event takes place is encoded directly inside of the individual event.

```
<listPerson>
  <person corresp="#cap_clemens"
    role="speaker">
    <name>
      <roleName type="title">Prof. Dr.</roleName>
    </name>
    <affiliation corresp="#uni-rostock"/>
  </person>
  <person corresp="#sucharowski_wolfgang"
    role="speaker">
    <name>
      <roleName type="title">Prof. Dr.</roleName>
    </name>
    <affiliation corresp="#uni-rostock"/>
  </person>
</listPerson>
```

The titles of the speaker(s) are recorded according to the information provided in the lecture program, supporting materials (slides, videos, or blog posts), or a short biography. Common academic titles include:

- Dr. / Dr.-Ing. / PhD
- PD (Priv.-Doz.)
- Asst. Prof. / Assoc. Prof. / Jun.-Prof. / Prof. (Univ.-Prof.)

These titles are standardized. For instance, "Univ.-Prof." is simplified to "Prof.", and variations in spelling (e.g., "PhD" and "Ph.D.") are standardized.

Academic degrees such as *Bakkalaureus Artium* / *Bachelor of Arts (B.A.)* and *Magister Artium* / *Master of Arts (M.A.)* are not recorded, as they are typically not included in the program. Similarly, if no title is available, the value *not found* is used:

```
<listPerson>
  <person corresp="#theise_antje"
    role="speaker">
    <name>
      <roleName type="title">not found</roleName>
    </name>
    <affiliation corresp="#ub-rostock"/>
  </person>
</listPerson>
```

## Hosts and Organizers

Hosts are recorded at the end of the individual lecture entry to indicate which organizations were responsible for hosting the lecture, i.e., those that invited the speaker(s). The host institution is specified with an `<org>` element that includes the attribute *role* with the standardized value *host-institution*. The *corresp* attribute references the corresponding organization entry in the TEI

header. This value is recorded independently of the lecture modality (i.e., in presence, hybrid, or online).

```
<org corresp="#uni-rostock"
  role="host-institution"/>
```

As mentioned above, information about the hosting institutions concludes the section for an individual lecture. However, the final element within a lecture series term is the information about the organizers of the term. This information is stored within an `<org>` element with the attribute *role* and the standardized value *organizer*.

```
<org corresp="#henny-krahmer_ulrike #alvares-freire_fernanda #renz_erik"
  role="organizer"/>
```

Unlike host institutions, which are organizations, organizers are recorded as individual persons, as can be seen in the example above. It is possible for an organizer to also be a speaker in another lecture series or even in their own series.

Since organizational responsibility can change from term to term, it is considered appropriate to record this information at this level rather than for the entire series.

## Creating IDs

The dataset assigns unique IDs to lecture series, lecture series terms, individual lectures, persons, organizations, and locations, which are consistently stored in the *xml:id* attribute. The following aspects must be considered when creating IDs:

- Lowercase only: All IDs are written exclusively in lowercase.
- No numbers: Numbers are not used in IDs.
- Latin script only: The Latin script is consistently applied.
- No diacritical marks: Diacritical marks (e.g., ä, ö, ü, â, ê, î) are completely removed or replaced with corresponding transliterations (e.g., ä → ae, ö → oe, è → e).

Additional considerations include:

- Standardized prefixes: Certain IDs, such as those for universities, always begin with a fixed prefix (e.g., *uni-* for universities, *fh-* for universities of applied sciences).
- Use of hyphens and underscores: Two types of separators are used in the dataset:
  - Underscores (`_`) are used exclusively for person IDs, separating the surname from the given name.
  - Hyphens (`-`) are used for organizations and locations to separate individual name components (e.g., multi-word city names). In person IDs, hyphens are used to connect multiple given names or multiple surnames.



## Capturing Language

All collected information is recorded exclusively in the languages in which it appears on the respective websites. Each element of a lecture event that contains textual information in a certain language is marked with the attribute *xml:lang*, specifying the corresponding language value, such as *en* for English or *de* for German. No translations of content are produced.

The documentation of series, terms and lectures is mainly focused on English, Italian, German, Spanish, French and Portuguese, due to the language knowledge of the collaborators in this project. Other languages can be included, especially when it comes to recording the names of organizations or places. By default, these informations are documented in the language in which they originally emerged, which may differ from the respective national language.

In some cases, a title may include multiple languages, whether for stylistic reasons or because it contains a key term discussed in the lecture or an introductory quotation. In such instances, only the primary language of the title is recorded, while additional languages are not documented, as shown in the following example:

```
<eventName xml:lang="en">Le chemin de l'image in Renaissance Lyon: digital tools for the study of early modern illustrations</eventName>
<note type="abstract" xml:lang="en">
  <p>The talk will focus on the study of digital collections of early modern printed books and on the implementation of the Imagematching software in cooperation with the Visual Geometry Group of Department of Engineering Science at University of Oxford. In the research project The Early Modern Illustrated Book in Lyon (Equipex Biblissima/Ca' Foscari), the art historian Barbara Tramelli developed a new methodology for the study of book illustrations, using and implementing for her research Renaissance images two digital tools: [...]</p>
</note>
```

In such cases, the primary language of the element must be identified and recorded. In the example above, this would be English. The primary language can often be determined by identifying which part of the content conveys the core subject matter rather than serving a decorative or stylistic function. For titles, another useful indicator is the language of the accompanying abstract, if available.

## Capturing Links

In order to ensure the long-term accessibility and reliability of information, we secure all relevant sources via links, which are then archived using the

Wayback Machine from the Internet Archive (<https://web.archive.org/>). This archiving process applies to all links, except for DOI links, which are permanent by definition and do not require additional archiving. However, links that lead to videos, such as those on YouTube, are not archived because archiving by the Wayback Machine is not possible in this case.

All links within the dataset are encoded using the <ptr> (pointer) element. Within this element, the *type* attribute is used to specify the exact role of the link, as seen in the following examples:

```
<ptr target="https://web.archive.org/web/20230609113732/https://  
www.unive.it/data/33113/2/38661"  
type="programme"/>  
<ptr target="https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.7798685"  
type="slides"/>  
<ptr target="https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=itVMXEEKZFQ"  
type="video"/>  
<ptr target="https://doi.org/10.58079/o57z"  
type="blogpost"/>
```

The values for the *type* attribute are as follows:

- *programme*: Refers to a complete programme for a semester or event series, or to a dedicated page for a specific lecture.
- *slides*: Points to presentation slides, such as PDFs or PowerPoint files.
- *video*: Links to a video recording of the lecture, including the presentation and possibly the discussion. These links are not archived.
- *blogpost*: Directs to a blog post discussing the lecture, potentially featuring parts of the presentation, speaker information, or related images.

It is important to highlight that we only capture links that directly originate from the lecture series' website. While further research to gather additional sources is possible, it has not been consistently carried out.

## **Capturing Organizations**

Organizations involved in Digital Humanities lecture series are divided into two main roles: the affiliation of the (invited) speaker and the hosting venue.

In most cases, organizations are listed at the level of entire universities, research institutions, or cultural institutions. Specific departments or institutes within these organizations, where speakers may be affiliated, are not captured in the data. E.g. if an affiliation to the Institute of German Studies at the University of Rostock is mentioned in a program, only the University of Rostock is encoded.

Each organization is represented by a separate entry within the <particDesc> element, found under <listOrg>. The <org> sub-element defines the organization and is assigned a unique ID through the *xml:id* attribute. This ID is used throughout the dataset to ensure consistent referencing. Additionally, the *type* attribute within the <org> element is employed to specify the

organization's precise role. Available values for the *type* attribute include:

- *university*: for universities and universities of applied sciences
- *research\_institution*: for private or public institutions that conduct research
- *company*: for companies or private sector organizations
- *glam*: for galleries, libraries, archives, museums; generally, all cultural and memory institutions
- *other*: we use this when none of the categories listed above apply, for example in the case of radio stations or newspapers.

As can be seen in the example below, the "Università di Bologna" is represented as an organization with the ID *uni-bologna*. The name of the organization is presented in the original language (Italian, in this case), and an external Wikidata identifier is included within the `<idno>` element.

```
<org type="university" xml:id="uni-bologna">
  <name xml:lang="it">Università di Bologna</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q131262</idno>
  <place corresp="#bologna"/>
</org>
```

## Universities

As described above, all organizations, including all university entries, are assigned an ID. Unlike those of other organizations, university IDs always begin with *uni-* or *fh-* followed by a unique part, typically derived from the name or location of the institution. For example, the University of Rostock is captured as follows:

```
<org type="university" xml:id="uni-rostock">
  <name xml:lang="de">Universität Rostock</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q159895</idno>
  <place corresp="#rostock"/>
</org>
```

In order to maintain clarity and allow for future adjustments, the names of universities are standardized. For instance, "Julius-Maximilians-Universität Würzburg" is shortened to "Universität Würzburg", and the corresponding ID becomes *uni-wuerzburg*:

```
<org type="university"
xml:id="uni-wuerzburg">
  <name xml:lang="de">Universität Würzburg</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q161976</idno>
  <place corresp="#wuerzburg"/>
</org>
```

This simplification also reduces the need for updates when a university undergoes rebranding or changes its name, such as in the case of the recent shift in Münster from "Westfälische Wilhelms-Universität Münster" to "Universität Münster".

When multiple universities exist within the same city, additional distinctions

are added to the ID to avoid confusion. These distinctions are appended to the base ID formed by the university's type and location. For example, in London, where several institutions exist, their IDs are distinguished as follows:

```
<org type="university"
xml:id="uni-london-city">
  <name xml:lang="en">City, University of London</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q1094046</idno>
  <place corresp="#london"/>
</org>
<org type="university"
xml:id="uni-london-ucl">
  <name xml:lang="en">University College London</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q193196</idno>
  <place corresp="#london"/>
</org>
<org type="university"
xml:id="uni-london-kcl">
  <name xml:lang="en">King's College London</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q245247</idno>
  <place corresp="#london"/>
</org>
```

In contrast, Berlin presents another situation, as the German naming convention is that distinctions should precede the city name, resulting in IDs such as:

```
<org type="university"
xml:id="uni-fu-berlin">
  <name xml:lang="de">Freie Universität Berlin</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q153006</idno>
  <place corresp="#berlin"/>
</org>
<org type="university"
xml:id="uni-hu-berlin">
  <name xml:lang="de">Humboldt-Universität zu Berlin</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q152087</idno>
  <place corresp="#berlin"/>
</org>
<org type="university"
xml:id="uni-tu-berlin">
  <name xml:lang="de">Technische Universität Berlin</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q51985</idno>
  <place corresp="#berlin"/>
</org>
```

As with all organizations in the dataset, each university is assigned an external identifier, referenced through the `<idno>` element, which refers to the university's Wikidata entry.

## Research Institutions

Research institutions are identified using the *type* attribute with the value *research\_institution*. This category includes private and public research organizations that are not classified as universities.

```
<org type="research_institution"
  xml:id="research-mpi">
  <name xml:lang="de">Max-Planck-Institut für Wissenschaftsgeschichte</
name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q685399</idno>
  <place corresp="#berlin"/>
</org>
```

The structure follows the same pattern as universities, ensuring consistency across all organization types.

## GLAM Institutions

GLAM organizations (Galleries, Libraries, Archives, and Museums) are identified using the *type* attribute with the value *glam*. The IDs for GLAM organizations are usually derived from existing abbreviations.

```
<org type="glam" xml:id="museum-snm">
  <name xml:lang="de">Schweizerisches Nationalmuseum (SNM)</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q2256718</idno>
  <place corresp="#zuerich"/>
</org>
```

To facilitate clear differentiation, prefixes such as *museum-*, *library-*, *gallery-*, and *archive-* are used in IDs when applicable. If an institution does not fit these categories, an existing abbreviation serves as the identifier:

```
<org type="glam" xml:id="spk">
  <name xml:lang="de">Stiftung Preußischer Kulturbesitz (SPK)</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q685171</idno>
  <place corresp="#berlin"/>
</org>
```

## Companies

The *company* category includes both private and public organizations that are not primarily engaged in academic research. This encompasses commercial enterprises as well as organizations funded through grants or sponsorships, such as those providing infrastructure or research support.

Organizations in this category are identified using the *type* attribute with the value *company*. Similar to research institutions and GLAMs, company IDs are derived from their names and, where applicable, existing abbreviations.

```
<org type="company" xml:id="wordpress">
  <name xml:lang="en">WordPress Foundation</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q56787199</idno>
```

```

    <place corresp="#san-francisco"/>
  </org>
  <org type="company" xml:id="pagina">
    <name xml:lang="de">pagina Publikationstechnologien</name>
    <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q131538003</idno>
    <place corresp="#weil-der-stadt"/>
  </org>

```

## Capturing Persons

Each speaker included in the dataset is represented by an individual entry within the `<listPerson>` element, specifically under `<particDesc>`.

To ensure consistent identification, every speaker is assigned a unique ID through the `xml:id` attribute. This identifier follows a standardized format, combining the speaker's surname and given name, separated by an underscore. In cases where a speaker has multiple given or family names, these are connected using hyphens. For example:

```

<person xml:id="maget-dominice_antoinette">
  <name>
    <forename>Antoinette</forename>
    <surname>Maget Dominicé</surname>
  </name>
  <gender>female</gender>
  <idno type="orcid">https://orcid.org/0000-0001-9056-4544</idno>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q102211240</idno>
</person>

```

As shown above, each entry also records the speaker's social gender, represented by the `<gender>` element within the `<person>` element. The primary values for this element are *female* and *male*. The gender assignment is based primarily on the typical gender associations of given names. Additionally, where available, information from Wikidata and other external databases has been used to verify gender identity. If research indicates that a person does not fall within the binary gender spectrum, they are assigned the value *non-binary*. It should be noted that assigning gender based on name connotations is inherently prone to errors. While every effort has been made to ensure accuracy through external sources, there may still be instances where the assigned gender does not align with the individual's self-identification.

Each speaker entry includes a `<name>` element, which further contains `<forename>` and `<surname>` sub-elements. These store the full given name and surname of the individual without abbreviations or alterations.

Additionally, every speaker entry includes at least one, but typically two, `<idno>` elements. These elements reference external identifiers. One of these identifiers is the *orcid*, a researcher-specific identifier maintained by the speaker themselves, while the second is a *wikidata* ID. If a Wikidata entry does not already exist for a given speaker, a new record is created.

## Capturing Locations

Each location in the dataset is represented by an individual entry within the `<listPlace>` element, specifically under `<settingDesc>`. There are three types of entries: for continents, for countries and for cities. This distinction is made using the *type* attribute, which takes either the value *continent*, *country* or *city*.

All location names are recorded in English or using the vernacular form if no English form is known, following the naming conventions in place at the time of data collection.

To ensure consistent identification, each location is assigned a unique ID using the *xml:id* attribute. In most cases, this ID matches the name of the city, country or continent. However, exceptions are made when a city shares the same name as the country it belongs to, such as Luxembourg City in Luxembourg. The same rule applies to city-states:

```
<place type="country" xml:id="singapore">
  <name>Singapore</name>
</place>
<place type="city" xml:id="singapore-city">
  <country corresp="#singapore"/>
  <name>Singapore</name>
  <idno type="tgn">http://vocab.getty.edu/page/tgn/7001488</idno>
</place>
```

Each city entry includes a `<name>` element that records the full name of the place without abbreviations or modifications. Additionally, every city entry contains a `<country>` element, which links the city to its corresponding country via the *ref* attribute.

Each city entry also includes an `<idno>` element. Using the *type* attribute, this element provides a reference to the Getty Thesaurus of Geographic Names (TGN), ensuring precise identification of the location.

```
<place type="city" xml:id="rostock">
  <country corresp="#germany"/>
  <name>Rostock</name>
  <idno type="tgn">http://vocab.getty.edu/page/tgn/7100449</idno>
</place>
```

For place names consisting of multiple words, hyphens are used to connect the words in the *xml:id* attribute:

```
<place type="city" xml:id="le-mans">
  <country corresp="#france"/>
  <name>Le Mans</name>
  <idno type="tgn">http://vocab.getty.edu/page/tgn/7008494</idno>
</place>
```

# TEI Specifications

## Elements

### <TEI>

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the model.resource class. Multiple <TEI> elements may be combined within a <TEI> (or <teiCorpus>) element. [[4. Default Text Structure](#) [16.1. Varieties of Composite Text](#)]

#### Module

#### Attributes

#### textstructure

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

#### version

specifies the version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.  
**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.version



**Note** Major editions of the Guidelines have long been informally referred to by a name made up of the letter P (for Proposal) followed by a digit. The current release is one of the many releases of the fifth major edition of the Guidelines, known as P5. This attribute may be used to associate a TEI document with a specific release of the P5 Guidelines, in the absence of a more precise

association  
provided  
by the  
*source*  
attribute  
on the  
associated  
<schema  
Spec>.

**Contained by**  
**May contain**

**Note**

textstructure: TEI  
header: teiHeader  
textstructure: TEI text  
As with all elements in the TEI scheme (except <egXML>) this element is in the TEI namespace (see [5.7.2. Namespaces](#)). Thus, when it is used as the outermost element of a TEI document, it is necessary to specify the TEI namespace on it. This is customarily achieved by including `http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0` as the value of the XML namespace declaration (`xmlns`), without indicating a prefix, and then not using a prefix on TEI elements in the rest of the document. For example: `<TEI version="4.8.1" xml:lang="it" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">.`

**Example**

```
<TEI version="3.3.0" xmlns="http://
www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <fileDesc>
      <titleStmt>
        <title>The shortest TEI Document I
maginable</title>
      </titleStmt>
      <publicationStmt>
        <p>First published as part of TEI P
2, this is the P5
        version using a namespace.</p>
      </publicationStmt>
      <sourceDesc>
        <p>No source: this is an original wo
rk.</p>
      </sourceDesc>
```

## Example

```
</fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
<text>
  <body>
    <p>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</p>
  </body>
</text>
</TEI>
<TEI version="2.9.1" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <fileDesc>
      <titleStmt>
        <title>A TEI Document containing four page images </title>
      </titleStmt>
      <publicationStmt>
        <p>Unpublished demonstration file.</p>
      </publicationStmt>
      <sourceDesc>
        <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
      </sourceDesc>
    </fileDesc>
  </teiHeader>
  <facsimile>
    <graphic url="page1.png"/>
    <graphic url="page2.png"/>
    <graphic url="page3.png"/>
    <graphic url="page4.png"/>
  </facsimile>
</TEI>
```

## Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>
    <alternate>
      <sequence>
        <classRef key="model.resource"
          maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="TEI"
          maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
      </sequence>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

```

        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
    </alternate>
</sequence>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element TEI
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    attribute version { text }?,
    ( tei_teiHeader, ( ( tei_model.resourc
e+, tei_TEI* ) | tei_TEI+ ) )
}

```

## <affiliation>

**<affiliation>** (affiliation) contains an informal description of a person's present or past affiliation with some organization, for example an employer or sponsor. [[16.2.2. The Participant Description](#)]

### Module

namesdates

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*

- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*
    - *@to-custom*
    - *@datingPoint*
    - *@datingMethod*
  - att.datable.iso
    - *@when-iso*
    - *@notBefore-iso*
    - *@notAfter-iso*
    - *@from-iso*
    - *@to-iso*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*
    - *@to*
- att.editLike
  - *@evidence*
  - *@instant*
- att.naming
  - *@role*
  - *@nymRef*
  - att.canonical
    - *@key*
    - *@ref*
- att.typed
  - type
  - @subtype

type

characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

**Derived from** att.typed

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.e  
numerate  
d

	<p><b>Sample sponsor values include: recommend</b></p> <p><b>discredit</b></p> <p><b>pledged</b></p>
<b>Member of</b>	model.addressLike
<b>Contained by</b>	model.persStateLike
	core: bibl date desc editor item name
	note p pubPlace publisher resp term
	title
	header: catDesc change edition licence
	namesdates: affiliation bloc country
	eventName forename gender
	nameLink person placeName
	roleName surname
<b>May contain</b>	core: date name note ptr term title
	header: idno
	namesdates: affiliation bloc country
	eventName forename nameLink
	placeName roleName surname
	character data
<b>Note</b>	<p>If included, the name of an organization may be tagged using either the &lt;name&gt; element as above, or the more specific &lt;orgName&gt; element.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<p>&lt;affiliation&gt;Junior project officer for the US &lt;name type="org"&gt;National Endowment for</p> <p>the Humanities&lt;/name&gt;</p> <p>&lt;/affiliation&gt;</p>
<b>Example</b>	<p>This example indicates that the person was affiliated with the Australian Journalists Association at some point between the dates listed.</p> <p>&lt;affiliation notAfter="1960-01-01" notBefore="1957-02-28"&gt;Paid up member of the</p> <p>&lt;orgName&gt;Australian Journalists Association&lt;/orgName&gt;</p> <p>&lt;/affiliation&gt;</p>
<b>Example</b>	<p>This example indicates that the person was affiliated with Mount Holyoke</p>

College throughout the entire span of the date range listed.

```
<affiliation from="1902-01-01"
to="1906-01-01">Was an assistant pr
ofessor at Mount Holyoke College.</
affiliation>
```

## Content model

```
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element affiliation
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.datable.attributes,
  tei_att.editLike.attributes,
  tei_att.naming.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { text }?,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

## <availability>

**<availability>** (availability) supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```
header
• att.global
  • @xml:id
  • @n
  • @xml:lang
  • @xml:base
  • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp
    • @synch
    • @sameAs
    • @copyOf
    • @next
    • @prev
    • @exclude
    • @select
  • att.global.rendition
    • @rend
```

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@style</i></li> <li>• <i>@rendition</i></li> <li>• att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@cert</i></li> <li>• <i>@resp</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@source</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@default</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
status	<p>(status) supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> teidata.enumerated</p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b> free (free) the text is freely available.</p> <p><b>unknown</b> (unknown) the status of the text is unknown.</p> <p><b>restricted</b> (restricted) the text</p>



is  
not  
freel  
y  
avail  
able.

**Member of**

**Contained by**

**May contain**

**Note**

**Example**

model.biblPart

model.publicationStmtPart.detail

core: bibl

header: publicationStmt

core: p

header: licence

A consistent format should be adopted

<availability status="restricted">

<p>Available for academic research p  
urposes only.</p>

</availability>

<availability status="free">

<p>In the public domain</p>

</availability>

<availability status="restricted">

<p>Available under licence from the  
publishers.</p>

</availability>

<availability>

<licence target="http://  
opensource.org/licenses/MIT">

<p>The MIT License  
applies to this document.</p>

<p>Copyright (C) 2011 by The Unive  
rsity of Victoria</p>

<p>Permission is hereby granted, fre  
e of charge, to any person obtaining a  
copy

of this software and associated doc  
umentation files (the "Software"), to de  
al

in the Software without restriction,  
including without limitation the rights  
to use, copy, modify, merge, publish,  
distribute, sublicense, and/or sell

copies of the Software, and to permi  
t persons to whom the Software is  
furnished to do so, subject to the fol  
lowing conditions:</p>

<p>The above copyright notice and t  
his permission notice shall be included

in

all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</p>

<p>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR

IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY,

FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE

AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER

LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM,

OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN

THE SOFTWARE.</p>

</licence>

</availability>

<sch:pattern is-a="declarable">

<sch:param name="tde" value="tei:availability"/>

</sch:pattern>

## Schematron

## Content model

<content>

<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1">

<classRef key="model.availabilityPart"/>

<classRef key="model.pLike"/>

</alternate>

</content>

## Schema Declaration

element availability

{

tei\_att.global.attributes,

tei\_att.declarable.attributes,

attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,

( tei\_model.availabilityPart | tei\_model.pLike )+

}

## <bibl>

**<bibl>** (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

[[3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References](#) [2.2.7. The Source Description](#) [16.3.2. Declarable Elements](#)]

### Module

core

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.canonical
  - *@key*
  - *@ref*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.declarable
  - *@default*
- att.docStatus
  - *@status*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

### Member of

### Contained by

model.biblLike model.biblPart

core: bibl desc item listBibl note p title

header: change licence sourceDesc

**May contain**

taxonomy  
namesdates: event org person place  
textstructure: body  
core: bibl date editor name note ptr  
pubPlace publisher respStmt term title  
header: availability edition idno  
namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
eventName forename nameLink  
placeName roleName surname  
character data

**Note**

Contains *phrase-level* elements,  
together with any combination of  
elements from the model.biblPart class

**Example**

<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Fe  
minist Companion to Literature in Engl  
ish (Yale,  
1990)</bibl>

**Example**

<bibl>  
<title level="a">The Interesting story  
of the Children in the Wood</title>. In  
<author>Victor E Neuberg</author>,  
<title>The Penny Histories</title>.  
<publisher>OUP</publisher>  
<date>1968</date>.  
</bibl>

**Example**

<bibl subtype="book\_chapter" type="article"  
xml:id="carlin\_2003">  
<author>  
<name>  
<surname>Carlin</surname>  
(<forename>Claire</forename>)</name>  
</author>,  
<title level="a">The Staging of Impotence : France's last  
congrès</title> dans  
<bibl type="monogr">  
<title level="m">Theatrum mundi : s  
tudies in honor of Ronald W.  
Tobin</title>, éd.  
<editor>  
<name>  
<forename>Claire</forename>  
<surname>Carlin</surname>  
</name>  
</editor> et

## Schematron

## Content model

```
<editor>
  <name>
    <forename>Kathleen</forename>
    <surname>Wine</surname>
  </name>
</editor>,
<pubPlace>Charlottesville, Va.</
pubPlace>,
<publisher>Rookwood Press</
publisher>,
<date when="2003">2003</date>.
</bibl>
</bibl>
<sch:pattern is-a="declarable">
<sch:param name="tde" value="tei:bi
bl"/> </sch:pattern>
```

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.highlighted"/>
  <classRef key="model.pPart.data"/>
  <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
  <classRef key="model.segLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.biblPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element bibl
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.canonical.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.declarable.attributes,
  tei_att.docStatus.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | tei_model.gLike
    | tei_model.highlighted
    | tei_model.pPart.data
    | tei_model.pPart.edit
```

```

| tei_model.segLike
| tei_model.ptrLike
| tei_model.biblPart
| tei_model.global
)*
}

```

## <bloc>

**<bloc>** (bloc) contains the name of a geo-political unit consisting of two or more nation states or countries. [[14.2.3. Place Names](#)]

### Module

namesdates

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*
    - *@to-custom*
    - *@datingPoint*
    - *@datingMethod*

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.datable.iso <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• @when-iso</li> <li>• @notBefore-iso</li> <li>• @notAfter-iso</li> <li>• @from-iso</li> <li>• @to-iso</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.datable.w3c <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• @when</li> <li>• @notBefore</li> <li>• @notAfter</li> <li>• @from</li> <li>• @to</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• @role</li> <li>• @nymRef</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• @key</li> <li>• @ref</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• @type</li> <li>• @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	model.placeNamePart
<b>Contained by</b>	core: bibl date desc editor item name note p pubPlace publisher resp term title
	header: catDesc change edition licence namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename gender nameLink org place placeName roleName surname
<b>May contain</b>	core: date name note ptr term title header: idno namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename nameLink placeName roleName surname character data
<b>Example</b>	<bloc type="union">the European Uni on</bloc> <bloc type="continent">Africa</bloc>
<b>Content model</b>	<content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	element bloc { tei_att.global.attributes,

```

    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.dataable.attributes,
    tei_att.naming.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_macro.phraseSeq
}

```

## <body>

**<body>** (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [[4. Default Text Structure](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```

textstructure
• att.global
  • @xml:id
  • @n
  • @xml:lang
  • @xml:base
  • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp
    • @synch
    • @sameAs
    • @copyOf
    • @next
    • @prev
    • @exclude
    • @select
  • att.global.rendition
    • @rend
    • @style
    • @rendition
  • att.global.responsibility
    • @cert
    • @resp
  • att.global.source
    • @source
• att.declaring
  • @decls

```

**Contained by**  
**May contain**

```

textstructure: text
core: bibl desc list listBibl note p
namesdates: listEvent listOrg
listPerson listPlace

```

### Example

```

<body>
  <l>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes ua
rd</l>
  <l>metudæs maecti end his modgidan
c</l>
  <l>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gi

```



## Content model

```
huaes</l>
<l>eci dryctin or astelidæ</l>
<l>he aerist scop aelda barnum</l>
<l>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</l>
<l>tha middungeard moncynnæs uar
d</l>
<l>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</l>
<l>firum foldu frea allmectig</l>
<trailer>primo cantauit Cædmon istu
d carmen.</trailer>
</body>
```

```
<content>
<sequence>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0">
    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="0">
    <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/
>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/
>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <alternate>
    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
"
      minOccurs="0">
        <classRef key="model.global"/>
        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/
>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
```

```

minOccurs="1">
<classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded
"
minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.global"/>
<classRef key="model.divGenLike"/
>
</alternate>
</sequence>
<sequence>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded
"
minOccurs="1">
<alternate maxOccurs="1" minOcc
urs="1">
<elementRef key="schemaSpec"/>
<classRef key="model.common"/>
</alternate>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccu
rs="0"/>
</sequence>
<alternate minOccurs="0">
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounde
d"
minOccurs="1">
<classRef key="model.divLike"/>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounde
d"
minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.global"/>
<classRef key="model.divGenLike
"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounde
d"
minOccurs="1">
<classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounde
d"
minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.global"/>
<classRef key="model.divGenLike
"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>

```

```

        </alternate>
    </sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccur
s="0"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element body
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.declaring.attributes,
    (
        tei_model.global*,
        ( ( tei_model.divTop, ( tei_model.glo
bal | tei_model.divTop )* )? ),
        (
            ( tei_model.divGenLike, ( tei_mod
el.global | tei_model.divGenLike )* )?
        ),
        (
            (
                ( tei_model.divLike, ( tei_model.
global | tei_model.divGenLike )* )+
            )
            | (
                (
                    tei_model.div1Like,
                    ( tei_model.global | tei_model.
divGenLike )*
                )+
            )
            | (
                ( ( ( schemaSpec | tei_model.co
mmon ), tei_model.global* )+ ),
                (
                    (
                        tei_model.divLike,
                        ( tei_model.global | tei_mo
del.divGenLike )*
                    )+
                )
            )
        )
    )
}

```

```

    )
    | (
      (
        tei_model.div1Like,
        ( tei_model.global | tei_mo
del.divGenLike )*)
      )+
    )
  )?
)
),
( ( tei_model.divBottom, tei_model.
global* )*)
)
}

```

## <catDesc>

**<catDesc>** (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal <textDesc>.

[\[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration\]](#)

### Module

### Attributes

#### header

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.canonical

**Contained by**  
**May contain**

**Example**  
**Example**

**Content model**

**Schema Declaration**

- @key
- @ref

```

header: category
core: date name ptr term title
header: idno
namesdates: affiliation bloc country
eventName forename nameLink
placeName roleName surname
character data
<catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
<catDesc>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issu
es</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose degree="high" type="enter
tain"/>
    <purpose degree="medium" type="in
form"/>
  </textDesc>
</catDesc>

<content>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"
/>
    <classRef key="model.catDescPart"/
>
  </alternate>
</content>

element catDesc
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.canonical.attributes,
  ( text | tei_model.limitedPhrase | tei_
model.catDescPart )*
}

```

## **<category>**

**<category>** (category) contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy.

[\[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration\]](#)

### **Module**

### **Attributes**

#### header

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.datcat
  - *@datcat*
  - *@valueDatcat*
  - *@targetDatcat*

**Contained by**  
**May contain**

### **Example**

### **Example**

header: category taxonomy

core: desc

header: catDesc category

```
<category xml:id="b1">  
  <catDesc>Prose reportage</  
catDesc>
```

```
</category>
```

```
<category xml:id="b2">  
  <catDesc>Prose </catDesc>
```

```
<category xml:id="b11">  
  <catDesc>journalism</catDesc>  
</category>
```

```
<category xml:id="b12">  
  <catDesc>fiction</catDesc>
```

## Example

```
</category>
</category>
<category xml:id="LIT">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">literatura pi
  ękna</catDesc>
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">fiction</
  catDesc>
  <category xml:id="LPROSE">
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">proza</
    catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">prose</
    catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="LPOETRY">
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">poezja</
    catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">poetry</
    catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="LDRAMA">
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">dramat</
    catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">drama</
    catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
```

## Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate>
      <elementRef key="catDesc"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="0">
        <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
        <elementRef key="equiv"/>
        <elementRef key="gloss"/>
      </alternate>
    </alternate>
    <elementRef key="category"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

element category

```

{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.datcat.attributes,
  (
    ( tei_catDesc+ | ( tei_model.descLi
ke | equiv | gloss )* ),
    tei_category*
  )
}

```

## <change>

**<change>** (change) documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [\[2.6. The Revision Description 2.4.1. Creation 12.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions\]](#)

### Module

### Attributes

#### header

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.ascribed
  - *@who*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*



- *@notAfter-custom*
- *@from-custom*
- *@to-custom*
- *@datingPoint*
- *@datingMethod*
- att.datable.iso
  - *@when-iso*
  - *@notBefore-iso*
  - *@notAfter-iso*
  - *@from-iso*
  - *@to-iso*
- att.datable.w3c
  - *@when*
  - *@notBefore*
  - *@notAfter*
  - *@from*
  - *@to*
- att.docStatus
  - *@status*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

target

(target) points to one or more elements that belong to this change.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** 1-∞  
 occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

**Contained by**  
**May contain**

header: listChange revisionDesc  
 core: bibl date desc list listBibl name  
 note p ptr term title  
 header: idno  
 namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
 eventName forename listEvent listOrg  
 listPerson listPlace nameLink  
 placeName roleName surname  
 character data  
 The *who* attribute may be used to point

**Note**

to any other element, but will typically specify a `<respStmt>` or `<person>` element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it.

It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The *status* attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented.

### Example

```
<titleStmt>
  <title> ... </title>
  <editor xml:id="LDB">Lou Burnard</
editor>
  <respStmt xml:id="BZ">
    <resp>copy editing</resp>
    <name>Brett Zamir</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
<!-- ... -->
<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change status="public" when="2008-02-02"
    who="#BZ">Finished chapter 23</
change>
  <change status="draft" when="2008-01-02"
    who="#BZ">Finished chapter 2</
change>
  <change n="P2.2" when="1991-12-21"
    who="#LDB">Added examples to sec
tion 3</change>
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#
MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change>
</revisionDesc>
<profileDesc>
  <creation>
    <listChange>
      <change xml:id="DRAFT1">First dr
aft in pencil</change>
      <change notBefore="1880-12-09"
        xml:id="DRAFT2">First revision, m
ostly
        using green ink</change>
      <change notBefore="1881-02-13"
        xml:id="DRAFT3">Final corrections
```

### Example

```

as
    supplied to printer.</change>
</listChange>
</creation>
</profileDesc>

```

## Content model

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/
>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element change
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.ascribed.attributes,
  tei_att.dataable.attributes,
  tei_att.docStatus.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  attribute target { list { + } }?,
  tei_macro.specialPara
}

```

## <classDecl>

**<classDecl>** (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. [[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration](#) [2.3. The Encoding Description](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```

header
  • att.global
    • @xml:id
    • @n
    • @xml:lang
    • @xml:base
    • @xml:space
    • att.global.linking
      • @corresp
      • @synch
      • @sameAs
      • @copyOf
      • @next
      • @prev
      • @exclude
      • @select
    • att.global.rendition
      • @rend
      • @style
      • @rendition

```

**Member of**  
**Contained by**  
**May contain**  
**Example**

- att.global.responsibility
  - @cert
  - @resp
- att.global.source
  - @source

```
model.encodingDescPart
header: encodingDesc
header: taxonomy
<classDecl>
  <taxonomy xml:id="LCSH">
    <bibl>Library of Congress Subject H
eadings</bibl>
  </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
<!-- ... -->
<textClass>
  <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
    <term>Political science</term>
    <term>United States -- Politics and g
overnment --
      Revolution, 1775-1783</term>
  </keywords>
</textClass>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <elementRef key="taxonomy"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="1"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element classDecl { tei_att.global.attri
butes, tei_taxonomy+ }
```

**<country>**

**<country>** (country) contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc. [[14.2.3. Place Names](#)]

**Module**

**Attributes**

```
namesdates
  • att.global
    • @xml:id
    • @n
    • @xml:lang
    • @xml:base
    • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp
```

- *@synch*
- *@sameAs*
- *@copyOf*
- *@next*
- *@prev*
- *@exclude*
- *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*
    - *@to-custom*
    - *@datingPoint*
    - *@datingMethod*
  - att.datable.iso
    - *@when-iso*
    - *@notBefore-iso*
    - *@notAfter-iso*
    - *@from-iso*
    - *@to-iso*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*
    - *@to*
- att.naming
  - *@role*
  - *@nymRef*
  - att.canonical
    - *@key*
    - *@ref*
- att.typed
  - *@type*

**Member of  
Contained by**

**May contain**

**Note**

**Example**

**Content model**

**Schema Declaration**

- *@subtype*

model.placeNamePart  
core: bibl date desc editor item name  
note p pubPlace publisher resp term  
title  
header: catDesc change edition licence  
namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
eventName forename gender  
nameLink org place placeName  
roleName surname  
core: date name note ptr term title  
header: idno  
namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
eventName forename nameLink  
placeName roleName surname  
character data  
The recommended source for codes to  
represent coded country names is ISO  
3166.

<country key="DK">Denmark</  
country>

<content>  
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>  
</content>

element country  
{  
  tei\_att.global.attributes,  
  tei\_att.cmc.attributes,  
  tei\_att.dataable.attributes,  
  tei\_att.naming.attributes,  
  tei\_att.typed.attributes,  
  tei\_macro.phraseSeq  
}

**<date>**

**<date>** (date) contains a date in any format. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](#) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#) [2.6. The Revision Description](#) [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](#) [16.2.3. The Setting Description](#) [14.4. Dates](#)]

**Module  
Attributes**

core

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*

- *@xml:base*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.calendarSystem
  - *@calendar*
- att.canonical
  - *@key*
  - *@ref*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*
    - *@to-custom*
    - *@datingPoint*
    - *@datingMethod*
  - att.datable.iso
    - *@when-iso*
    - *@notBefore-iso*
    - *@notAfter-iso*
    - *@from-iso*
    - *@to-iso*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*

- *@to*
- att.dimensions
  - *@unit*
  - *@quantity*
  - *@extent*
  - *@precision*
  - *@scope*
- att.ranging
  - *@atLeast*
  - *@atMost*
  - *@min*
  - *@max*
  - *@confidence*
- att.editLike
  - *@evidence*
  - *@instant*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

**Member of**

**Contained by**

model.dateLike  
 model.publicationStmtPart.detail  
 core: bibl date desc editor item name  
 note p pubPlace publisher resp term  
 title  
 header: catDesc change edition licence  
 publicationStmt  
 namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
 eventName forename gender  
 nameLink placeName roleName  
 surname

**May contain**

core: date name note ptr term title  
 header: idno  
 namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
 eventName forename nameLink  
 placeName roleName surname  
 character data

**Example**

<date when="1980-02">early Februar  
 y 1980</date>

**Example**

Given on the <date when="1977-06-  
 12">Twelfth Day  
 of June in the Year of Our Lord One Th  
 ousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-  
 seven of the Republic  
 the Two Hundredth and first and of th  
 e University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>

**Example**

<date when="1990-09">September 19  
 90</date>

**Content model**



```

<content>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="0">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element date
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.calendarSystem.attributes,
  tei_att.canonical.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.dataable.attributes,
  tei_att.dimensions.attributes,
  tei_att.editLike.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | tei_model.gLike | tei_model.p
hrase | tei_model.global )*
}

```

### <desc>

**<desc>** (description) contains a short description of the purpose, function, or use of its parent element, or when the parent is a documentation element, describes or defines the object being documented. [[23.4.1. Description of Components](#)]

#### Module

#### Attributes

- core
  - att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:base
    - @xml:space
  - att.global.linking
    - @corresp
    - @synch
    - @sameAs
    - @copyOf
    - @next
    - @prev
    - @exclude
    - @select
  - att.global.rendition

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@rend</i></li> <li>• <i>@style</i></li> <li>• <i>@rendition</i></li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@cert</i></li> <li>• <i>@resp</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@source</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@generatedBy</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• type</li> <li>• <i>@subtype</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
type	<p>characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> att.typed</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> teidata.enumerated</p> <p><b>Suggested deprecated values include:</b> <b>deprecationInfo</b> (deprecation information) This element describes why or how its parent element</p>

is  
 bein  
 g  
 depr  
 ecat  
 ed,  
 typic  
 ally  
 inclu  
 ding  
 reco  
 mme  
 ndati  
 ons  
 for  
 alter  
 nate  
 enco  
 ding.

```
<dataSpec ident="
teidata.point"
  module="tei"
  validUntil="2050-
02-25">
  <desc type="depr
ecationInfo"
    versionDate="201
8-09-14"
    xml:lang="en">S
everal standards b
odies, including NI
ST in the USA,
    strongly recomm
end against ending
the representation
of a number
    with a decimal po
int. So instead of <
q>3.</q> use eithe
r <q>3</q>
    or <q>3.0</
q>.</desc>
<!-- ... -->
</dataSpec>
```

**Member of  
 Contained by**

model.descLike model.labelLike  
 core: desc item list listBibl note p title  
 header: category change licence  
 listChange taxonomy

## May contain

namesdates: event listEvent listOrg  
listPerson listPlace org place  
textstructure: body  
core: bibl date desc list listBibl name  
ptr term title  
header: idno  
namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
eventName forename listEvent listOrg  
listPerson listPlace nameLink  
placeName roleName surname  
character data

## Note

When used in a specification element  
such as <elementSpec>, TEI  
convention requires that this be  
expressed as a finite clause, beginning  
with an active verb.

## Example

Example of a <desc> element inside a  
documentation element.

```
<dataSpec ident="teidata.point"
  module="tei">
  <desc versionDate="2010-10-17"
    xml:lang="en">defines the data type
used to express a point in cartesian sp
ace.</desc>
  <content>
    <dataRef name="token"
      restriction="(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-
9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)/">
    </content>
  <!-- ... -->
</dataSpec>
```

## Example

Example of a <desc> element in a non-  
documentation element.

```
<place xml:id="KERG2">
  <placeName>Kerguelen Islands</
placeName>
  <!-- ... -->
  <terrain>
    <desc>antarctic tundra</desc>
  </terrain>
  <!-- ... -->
</place>
```

## Schematron

A <desc> with a *type* of  
*deprecationInfo* should only occur  
when its parent element is being  
deprecated. Furthermore, it should  
always occur in an element that is

being deprecated when <desc> is a valid child of that element.  
 <sch:rule context="tei:desc[ @type eq 'deprecationInfo']">  
 <sch:assert test="../@validUntil">Information about a deprecation should only be present in a specification element that is being deprecated: that is, only an element that has a @validUntil attribute should have a child <desc type="deprecationInfo">.</sch:assert>  
 </sch:rule>

## Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element desc
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { "deprecationInfo" }?,
  tei_macro.limitedContent
}
```

## <edition>

**<edition>** (edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text.  
[\[2.2.2. The Edition Statement\]](#)

### Module

### Attributes

```
header
• att.global
  • @xml:id
  • @n
  • @xml:lang
  • @xml:base
  • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp
    • @synch
    • @sameAs
    • @copyOf
    • @next
    • @prev
    • @exclude
```

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@select</i></li> <li>• att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@rend</i></li> <li>• <i>@style</i></li> <li>• <i>@rendition</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@cert</i></li> <li>• <i>@resp</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@source</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	model.biblPart
<b>Contained by</b>	core: bibl
<b>May contain</b>	header: editionStmt core: date name note ptr term title header: idno namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename nameLink placeName roleName surname character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;edition&gt;First edition &lt;date&gt;Oct 1990&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/edition&gt; &lt;edition n="S2"&gt;Students' edition&lt;/edition&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element edition { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>
<b>&lt;editionStmt&gt;</b>	
<b>&lt;editionStmt&gt;</b> (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text. [ <a href="#">2.2.2. The Edition Statement</a> <a href="#">2.2. The File Description</a> ]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@xml:id</i></li> <li>• <i>@n</i></li> <li>• <i>@xml:lang</i></li> <li>• <i>@xml:base</i></li> <li>• <i>@xml:space</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@corresp</i></li> <li>• <i>@synch</i></li> <li>• <i>@sameAs</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>

- *@copyOf*
- *@next*
- *@prev*
- *@exclude*
- *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

**Contained by**  
**May contain**

**Example**

```
header: fileDesc
core: editor p respStmt
header: edition
<editionStmt>
  <edition n="S2">Students' edition</
edition>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>Adapted by </resp>
    <name>Elizabeth Kirk</name>
  </respStmt>
</editionStmt>
<editionStmt>
  <p>First edition, <date>Michaelmas
Term, 1991.</date>
  </p>
</editionStmt>
```

**Example**

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="1"/>
    <sequence>
      <elementRef key="edition"/>
      <classRef key="model.respLike"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
    </sequence>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element editionStmt
{
```

```

    tei_att.global.attributes,
    ( tei_model.pLike+ | ( tei_edition, tei_
model.respLike* ) )
}

```

## <editor>

**<editor>** contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [[3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

core

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*
    - *@to-custom*
    - *@datingPoint*
    - *@datingMethod*
  - att.datable.iso
    - *@when-iso*



	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@notBefore-iso</i></li> <li>• <i>@notAfter-iso</i></li> <li>• <i>@from-iso</i></li> <li>• <i>@to-iso</i></li> <li>• att.dataable.w3c <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@when</i></li> <li>• <i>@notBefore</i></li> <li>• <i>@notAfter</i></li> <li>• <i>@from</i></li> <li>• <i>@to</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@role</i></li> <li>• <i>@nymRef</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@key</i></li> <li>• <i>@ref</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	model.respLike
<b>Contained by</b>	core: bibl
<b>May contain</b>	header: editionStmt titleStmt core: date name note ptr term title header: idno namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename nameLink placeName roleName surname character data
<b>Note</b>	<p>A consistent format should be adopted.</p> <p>Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.</p>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;editor role="Technical_Editor"&gt;Ron Van den Branden&lt;/editor&gt; &lt;editor role="Editor-in-Chief"&gt;John W alsh&lt;/editor&gt; &lt;editor role="Managing_Editor"&gt;Ann e Baillot&lt;/editor&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element editor {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.dataable.attributes, </pre>

```

    tei_att.naming.attributes,
    tei_macro.phraseSeq
}

```

## <encodingDesc>

**<encodingDesc>** (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [[2.3. The Encoding Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](#)]

### Module

header

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

### Member of

model.teiHeaderPart

### Contained by

header: teiHeader

### May contain

core: p

### Example

header: classDecl

<encodingDesc>

```

  <p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical
  information only. All
    hyphenation, punctuation, and varian
    t spellings normalized. No
    formatting or layout information pres
    erved.</p>
</encodingDesc>

```

### Content model

<content>

```

<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.encodingDesc
Part"/>
  <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element encodingDesc
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  ( tei_model.encodingDescPart | tei_m
odel.pLike )+
}

```

## <event>

**<event>** (event) contains data relating to anything of significance that happens in time. [[14.3.1. Basic Principles](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```

namesdates
• att.global
  • @xml:id
  • @n
  • @xml:lang
  • @xml:base
  • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp
    • @synch
    • @sameAs
    • @copyOf
    • @next
    • @prev
    • @exclude
    • @select
  • att.global.rendition
    • @rend
    • @style
    • @rendition
  • att.global.responsibility
    • @cert
    • @resp
  • att.global.source
    • @source
• att.datable
  • @period
  • att.datable.custom

```

- *@when-custom*
- *@notBefore-custom*
- *@notAfter-custom*
- *@from-custom*
- *@to-custom*
- *@datingPoint*
- *@datingMethod*
- att.datable.iso
  - *@when-iso*
  - *@notBefore-iso*
  - *@notAfter-iso*
  - *@from-iso*
  - *@to-iso*
- att.datable.w3c
  - *@when*
  - *@notBefore*
  - *@notAfter*
  - *@from*
  - *@to*
- att.editLike
  - *@evidence*
  - *@instant*
- att.locatable
  - *@where*
- att.naming
  - *@role*
  - *@nymRef*
- att.canonical
  - *@key*
  - *@ref*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

**Member of**  
**Contained by**

**May contain**

**Example**

model.eventLike  
 namesdates: event listEvent org  
 person place  
 core: bibl desc listBibl note p ptr  
 header: idno  
 namesdates: event eventName  
 listEvent listPerson listPlace org  
 person place  
 <listEvent>  
 <event when="1618-05-23" where="Prague"  
 #Prague"  
 xml:id="SecondDefPrague">  
 <eventName>1618 Defenestration of

```

Prague</eventName>
  <idno>https://www.wikidata.org/
wiki/Q13365740</idno>
  <listPerson type="defenstrated">
    <person>
      <persName>Jaroslav Bořita z Marti
nic</persName>
      <idno type="GND">https://d-
nb.info/gnd/116810998</idno>
    </person>
    <person>
      <persName>Vilém Slavata z Chlum
u a Košumberka</persName>
      <idno type="GND">https://d-
nb.info/gnd/1018376615</idno>
    </person>
    <person>
      <persName>Filip Fabricius</
persName>
      <idno type="GND">https://d-
nb.info/gnd/133946118</idno>
    </person>
  </listPerson>
  <place xml:id="Prague">
    <placeName>Prague</placeName>
  </place>
</event>
<event from="1618" to="1648"
xml:id="ThirtyYearsWar">
  <eventName>Thirty Years' War</
eventName>
  <idno>https://www.wikidata.org/
wiki/Q2487</idno>
  <event when="1643-03-19" where="
#Rocroi"
xml:id="BattleofRocroi">
  <eventName>Battle of Rocroi</
eventName>
  <idno type="Wikidata">https://
www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q728480</
idno>
  <idno type="GND">https://d-
nb.info/gnd/4202901-6</idno>
  <place xml:id="Rocroi">
    <placeName>Rocroi</placeName>
  </location>
  <geo decls="#WGS">49.926111 4.
522222</geo>

```

## Example

```
</location>
</place>
</event>
</event>
</listEvent>
<person>
  <event type="mat" when="1972-10-12">
    <label>matriculation</label>
  </event>
  <event type="grad" when="1975-06-23">
    <label>graduation</label>
  </event>
</person>
```

## Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="idno"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    <classRef key="model.headLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    <alternate>
      <classRef key="model.pLike"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
      <classRef key="model.labelLike"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
      <elementRef key="eventName"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
      <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>
      <elementRef key="link"/>
      <elementRef key="idno"/>
    </alternate>
    <classRef key="model.eventLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
```

```

minOccurs="0">
  <classRef key="model.personLike"
    maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
  <elementRef key="listPerson"
    maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
</alternate>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
  <classRef key="model.placeLike"
    maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
  <elementRef key="listPlace"
    maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
</alternate>
<classRef key="model.objectLike"
  maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
  <elementRef key="relation" maxOcc
urs="1"
    minOccurs="1"/>
  <elementRef key="listRelation"
    maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element event
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.dataable.attributes,
  tei_att.editLike.attributes,
  tei_att.locatable.attributes,
  tei_att.naming.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  (
    tei_idno*,
    tei_model.headLike*,
    ( tei_model.pLike+ | tei_model.labe
lLike+ | tei_eventName+ ),
    (
      tei_model.noteLike
      | tei_model.biblLike
      | tei_model.ptrLike
      | linkGrp
      | link
    )
  )
}

```

```

        | tei_idno
    )*,
    tei_model.eventLike*,
    ( tei_model.personLike | tei_listPers
on )*,
    ( tei_model.placeLike | tei_listPlace
)*,
    tei_model.objectLike*,
    ( relation | listRelation )*
)
}

```

## <eventName>

**<eventName>** (name of an event) contains a proper noun or noun phrase used to refer to an event. [[14.2.4. Event Names](#)]

### Module

namesdates

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*



- *@to-custom*
- *@datingPoint*
- *@datingMethod*
- att.datable.iso
  - *@when-iso*
  - *@notBefore-iso*
  - *@notAfter-iso*
  - *@from-iso*
  - *@to-iso*
- att.datable.w3c
  - *@when*
  - *@notBefore*
  - *@notAfter*
  - *@from*
  - *@to*
- att.editLike
  - *@evidence*
  - *@instant*
- att.personal
  - *@full*
  - *@sort*
- att.naming
  - *@role*
  - *@nymRef*
  - att.canonical
    - *@key*
    - *@ref*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

**Member of  
Contained by**

model.nameLike  
core: bibl date desc editor item name  
note p pubPlace publisher resp term  
title  
header: catDesc change edition licence  
namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
event eventName forename gender  
nameLink org placeName roleName  
surname

**May contain**

core: date name note ptr term title  
header: idno  
namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
eventName forename nameLink  
placeName roleName surname  
character data

**Example**

```
<listEvent>
  <event from="1939-09-01" to="1945-
09-02">
```

```

    <eventName xml:lang="de">Zweiter
Weltkrieg</eventName>
    <eventName xml:lang="en">World W
ar II</eventName>
    <idno type="GND">https://d-
nb.info/gnd/4079167-1</idno>
    <idno type="Wikidata">https://
www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q362</idno>
    <event from="1939-09-01" to="1939-
10-06"
    xml:id="UeberfallAufPolen">
    <eventName xml:lang="de">Überfal
l auf Polen</eventName>
    <eventName xml:lang="en">Invasio
n of Poland</eventName>
    <idno type="GND">https://d-
nb.info/gnd/4175002-0</idno>
    <idno type="LOC">https://
id.loc.gov/authorities/sh85148341</
idno>
    <listPlace type="affected">
    <place>
    <placeName xml:lang="pl">Gdańs
k</placeName>
    <location>
    <geo>54.350556 18.652778</
geo>
    </location>
    </place>
    </listPlace>
    </event>
    <event from="1941-06-22" to="1945-
05-09">
    <eventName xml:lang="de">Deutsc
h-Sowjetischer Krieg</eventName>
    <eventName xml:lang="ru">Велика
я Отечественная война</
eventName>
    <idno type="GND">https://d-
nb.info/gnd/4076906-9</idno>
    <idno type="Wikidata">https://
www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q189266</
idno>
    </event>
    </event>
</listEvent>
<p>On <date when="1719-03-
19">Monday</date>, <rs type="perso

```

## Example

## Example

n">she</rs> was writing about the  
<eventName ref="#SecondDefPrague">1618 Defenestration of Prague</eventName> which initiated the  
<rs ref="#ThirtyYearsWar" type="event">long war</rs>.</p>  
<event from="2019-09-16" to="2019-09-20"  
xml:id="tei2019graz">  
<eventName type="full">TEI 2019: What is text, really? TEI and beyond</eventName>  
<eventName type="short">TEI 2019</eventName>  
<note> The abstract leading to the <gi>eventName</gi> element is available at <ref target="https://gams.uni-graz.at/o:tei2019.141">https://gams.uni-graz.at/o:tei2019.141</ref>.  
Other related documents are available through <ref target="https://gams.uni-graz.at/tei2019">https://gams.uni-graz.at/tei2019</ref>, as well as in the  
<ref target="https://zenodo.org/communities/tei2019">TEI 2019 Zenodo community</ref>.  
</note>  
<listPerson type="LocalOrganizers">  
<person>  
<persName>  
<surname>Raunig</surname>  
<forename>Elisabeth</forename>  
</persName>  
</person>  
<person>  
<persName>  
<surname>Scholger</surname>  
<forename>Martina</forename>  
</persName>  
</person>  
<person>  
<persName>  
<surname>Scholger</surname>  
<forename>Walter</forename>  
</persName>  
</person>  
</person>

```

    <persName>
      <surname>Steiner</surname>
      <forename>Elisabeth</forename>
    </persName>
  </person>
</person>
<persName>
  <surname>Vogeler</surname>
  <forename>Georg</forename>
</persName>
</person>
</listPerson>
<place xml:lang="de">
  <placeName>Universität Graz</
placeName>
  <location>
    <address>
      <addrLine>ReSoWi Gebäude</
addrLine>
      <addrLine>Universitätsstraße 15</
addrLine>
      <postCode>8010</postCode>
      <settlement>Graz</settlement>
      <country>Österreich</country>
    </address>
    <geo>15.451651587656 47.0782151
12534</geo>
  </location>
</place>
<listRelation>
  <relation active="#tei2019graz"
    name="P31_is_instance_of" passive=
"#AnnualTEIConference"
    ref="https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/
Property:P31" type="CRM"/>
</listRelation>
</event>

```

## Content model

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element eventName
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.dataable.attributes,
  tei_att.editLike.attributes,

```

```

    tei_att.personal.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_macro.phraseSeq
}

```

## <fileDesc>

**<fileDesc>** (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [[2.2. The File Description](#) [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

#### header

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

### Contained by

### May contain

### Note

header: *teiHeader*

header: *editionStmt publicationStmt*

sourceDesc *titleStmt*

The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It

also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

## Example

```
<fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
    <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title>
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
    <p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p>
  </sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
```

## Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <sequence>
      <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>
      <elementRef key="editionStmt" minOccurs="0"/>
      <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>
      <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>
    >
    <elementRef key="seriesStmt" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="notesStmt" minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
  <elementRef key="sourceDesc" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
</sequence>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element fileDesc
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
```

```

        tei_titleStmt,
        tei_editionStmt?,
        extent?,
        tei_publicationStmt,
        seriesStmt*,
        notesStmt?
    ),
    tei_sourceDesc+
}

```

## <forename>

**<forename>** (forename) contains a forename, given or baptismal name.

[[14.2.1. Personal Names](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```

namesdates
• att.global
  • @xml:id
  • @n
  • @xml:lang
  • @xml:base
  • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp
    • @synch
    • @sameAs
    • @copyOf
    • @next
    • @prev
    • @exclude
    • @select
  • att.global.rendition
    • @rend
    • @style
    • @rendition
  • att.global.responsibility
    • @cert
    • @resp
  • att.global.source
    • @source
• att.cmc
  • @generatedBy
• att.personal
  • @full
  • @sort
• att.naming
  • @role
  • @nymRef

```

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• @key</li> <li>• @ref</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• @type</li> <li>• @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	model.persNamePart
<b>Contained by</b>	core: bibl date desc editor item name note p pubPlace publisher resp term title header: catDesc change edition licence namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename gender nameLink org placeName roleName surname
<b>May contain</b>	core: date name note ptr term title header: idno namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename nameLink placeName roleName surname character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;persName&gt;   &lt;roleName&gt;Ex-President&lt;/ roleName&gt;   &lt;forename&gt;George&lt;/forename&gt;   &lt;surname&gt;Bush&lt;/surname&gt; &lt;/persName&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element forename {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.personal.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   tei_macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
<b>&lt;gender&gt;</b>	
<b>&lt;gender&gt;</b> (gender) specifies the gender identity of a person, persona, or character. [ <a href="#">14.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics</a> ]	
<b>Module</b>	namesdates
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global</li> </ul>



- *@xml:id*
- *@n*
- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:base*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*
    - *@to-custom*
    - *@datingPoint*
    - *@datingMethod*
  - att.datable.iso
    - *@when-iso*
    - *@notBefore-iso*
    - *@notAfter-iso*
    - *@from-iso*
    - *@to-iso*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*
    - *@to*
- att.editLike
  - *@evidence*
  - *@instant*

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• @type</li> <li>• @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
value	supplies a coded value for gender identity. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata .gender separated by whitespace  <b>Note</b> Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.

**Member of  
Contained by  
May contain**

model.persStateLike  
namesdates: person  
core: date name note ptr term title  
header: idno  
namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
eventName forename nameLink  
placeName roleName surname  
character data  
**Note** As with other culturally-constructed traits such as age and sex, the way in which this concept is described in different cultural contexts varies. The normalizing attributes are provided only as an optional means of simplifying that variety for purposes of interoperability or project-internal taxonomies for consistency, and should not be used where that is

inappropriate or unhelpful. The content of the element may be used to describe the intended concept in more detail.

### Example

```
<gender value="W">woman</gender>
```

### Example

```
<gender value="NB">non-binary</gender>
```

### Content model

```
<content>  
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>  
</content>
```

### Schema Declaration

```
element gender  
{  
  tei_att.global.attributes,  
  tei_att.dataable.attributes,  
  tei_att.editLike.attributes,  
  tei_att.typed.attributes,  
  attribute value { list { + } }?,  
  tei_macro.phraseSeq  
}
```

## <idno>

**<idno>** (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [[14.3.1. Basic Principles](#) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](#) [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

#### header

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition

- *@rend*
- *@style*
- *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*
    - *@to-custom*
    - *@datingPoint*
    - *@datingMethod*
  - att.datable.iso
    - *@when-iso*
    - *@notBefore-iso*
    - *@notAfter-iso*
    - *@from-iso*
    - *@to-iso*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*
    - *@to*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - type
  - *@subtype*

type

categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.

**Derived from Status Datatype** att.typed Optional `data.e`

	numerate d
<b>Suggest</b>	<b>ISBN</b>
<b>ed</b>	Inter
<b>values</b>	natio
<b>include:</b>	nal
	Stan
	dard
	Book
	Num
	ber:
	a 13-
	or (if
	assign
	ned
	prior
	to
	2007
	) 10-
	digit
	ident
	ifyin
	g
	num
	ber
	assign
	ned
	by
	the
	publi
	shin
	g
	indu
	stry
	to a
	publi
	shed
	book
	or
	simil
	ar
	item,
	regis
	tere
	d
	with
	the
	<a href="#">Inter</a>

[national  
ISB  
N  
Agency.  
cy.](#)

**ISSN**

Inter  
nation  
nal  
Stan  
dard  
Seri  
al  
Num  
ber:  
an  
eight  
-digit  
num  
ber  
to  
uniq  
uely  
ident  
ify a  
seria  
l  
publi  
catio  
n.

**DOI**

Digit  
al  
Obje  
ct  
Iden  
tifier  
: a  
uniq  
ue  
strin  
g of  
lette  
rs  
and  
num

bers  
assigned  
to an  
electronic  
document

**URI**

.  
Uniform  
Resource  
Identifier  
: a  
string of  
characters  
to  
uniquely  
identify a  
resource,  
following  
the  
syntax of  
[RFC  
3986](#)

**VIAF**

.  
A  
data  
number  
in  
the  
Virtual  
Internet

Auth  
ority  
File  
assig  
ned  
to  
link  
diffe  
rent  
nam  
es in  
catal  
ogs  
arou  
nd  
the  
worl  
d for  
the  
same  
entit  
y.

**ESTC**

Engli  
sh  
Shor  
t-  
Title  
Cata  
logu  
e  
num  
ber:  
an  
ident  
ifyin  
g  
num  
ber  
assig  
ned  
to a  
docu  
ment  
in  
Engli  
sh  
print



ed in  
the  
Briti  
sh  
Isles  
or  
Nort  
h  
Ame  
rica  
befo  
re  
1801

.  
**OCLC**  
OCL  
C  
cont  
rol  
num  
ber  
(reco  
rd  
num  
ber)  
for  
the  
unio  
n  
catal  
og  
reco  
rd in  
Worl  
dCat  
, a  
unio  
n  
catal  
og  
for  
mem  
ber  
libra  
ries  
in  
the  
Onli

ne  
Com  
pute  
r  
Libr  
ary  
Cent  
er  
glob  
al  
coop  
erati  
ve.

**Member of**

**Contained by**

model.nameLike model.personPart  
model.publicationStmtPart.detail  
core: bibl date desc editor item name  
note p pubPlace publisher resp term  
title  
header: catDesc change edition idno  
licence publicationStmt  
namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
event eventName forename gender  
nameLink org person place placeName  
roleName surname

**May contain**

header: idno  
character data

**Note**

<idno> should be used for labels  
which identify an object or concept in  
a formal cataloguing system such as a  
database or an RDF store, or in a  
distributed system such as the World  
Wide Web. Some suggested values for  
*type* on <idno> are *ISBN*, *ISSN*, *DOI*,  
and *URI*.

**Example**

```
<idno type="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</idno>
<idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</idno>
<idno type="DOI">10.1000/123</idno>
<idno type="URI">http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</idno>
<idno type="URI">http://authority.nzetc.org/463/</idno>
<idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.5 37(17)</idno>
```

```

<idno type="Wing">C695</idno>
<idno type="oldCat">
  <g ref="#sym"/>345
</idno>

```

In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a <glyph> or <char> element referenced here as #sym.

## Content model

```

<content>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="0">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <elementRef key="idno"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element idno
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.datable.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type
  {
    "ISBN" | "ISSN" | "DOI" | "URI" | "V
IAF" | "ESTC" | "OCLC"
  }?,
  ( text | tei_model.gLike | tei_idno ) *
}

```

## <item>

**<item>** (item) contains one component of a list. [[3.8. Lists 2.6. The Revision Description](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```

core
• att.global
  • @xml:id
  • @n
  • @xml:lang
  • @xml:base
  • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp

```

- *@synch*
- *@sameAs*
- *@copyOf*
- *@next*
- *@prev*
- *@exclude*
- *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*

**Contained by**  
**May contain**

core: list  
core: bibl date desc list listBibl name  
note p ptr term title  
header: idno  
namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
eventName forename listEvent listOrg  
listPerson listPlace nameLink  
placeName roleName surname  
character data

**Note**

May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks.

Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global *n* attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the *n* attribute on the <item> element is by definition synonymous with the use of the <label> element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the <label> element, not *n*.

**Example**

```
<list rend="numbered">
  <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head>
  <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item>
```

```

    <item n="4.2">How King Lothar want
ed to appropriate one third of the Chur
ch revenues.</item>
    <item n="4.3">The wives and childre
n of Lothar.</item>
    <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bre
tons.</item>
    <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.
</item>
    <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</
item>
    <item> ...</item>
</list>

```

## Content model

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/
>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element item
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_macro.specialPara
}

```

## <licence>

**<licence>** contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```

header
  • att.global
    • @xml:id
    • @n
    • @xml:lang
    • @xml:base
    • @xml:space
    • att.global.linking
      • @corresp
      • @synch
      • @sameAs
      • @copyOf
      • @next
      • @prev
      • @exclude
      • @select
    • att.global.rendition

```

- *@rend*
- *@style*
- *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*
    - *@to-custom*
    - *@datingPoint*
    - *@datingMethod*
  - att.datable.iso
    - *@when-iso*
    - *@notBefore-iso*
    - *@notAfter-iso*
    - *@from-iso*
    - *@to-iso*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*
    - *@to*
- att.pointing
  - *@targetLang*
  - *@target*
  - *@evaluate*

**Member of  
Contained by  
May contain**

model.availabilityPart  
header: availability  
core: bibl date desc list listBibl name  
note p ptr term title  
header: idno  
namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
eventName forename listEvent listOrg  
listPerson listPlace nameLink  
placeName roleName surname  
character data  
**Note** A <licence> element should be  
supplied for each licence agreement  
applicable to the text in question. The

*target* attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The *when*, *notBefore*, *notAfter*, *from* or *to* attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.

### Example

```
<licence target="http://
www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-
NZETC-Help.html#licensing"> Licence
: Creative Commons Attribution-Share
Alike 3.0 New Zealand Licence
</licence>
```

### Example

```
<availability>
<licence notBefore="2013-01-01"
target="http://creativecommons.org/
licenses/by/3.0/">
<p>The Creative Commons Attribution
n 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence
applies to this document.</p>
<p>The licence was added on Januar
y 1, 2013.</p>
</licence>
</availability>
```

### Content model

```
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/
>
</content>
```

### Schema Declaration

```
element licence
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.dataable.attributes,
  tei_att.pointing.attributes,
  tei_macro.specialPara
}
```

### <list>

**<list>** (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [[3.8. Lists](#)]

#### Module

#### Attributes

```
core
• att.global
• @xml:id
• @n
• @xml:lang
• @xml:base
• @xml:space
```

- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - type
  - @subtype

type

(type) describes the nature of the items in the list.

**Derived from**

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.e  
numerate  
d

**Suggest gloss**  
**ed** (glos  
**values** s)  
**include:** each  
list  
item  
gloss  
es  
some  
term  
or  
conc  
ept,



which is given by a <label> element preceding the list item.

**index**

(index) each list item is an entry in an index such as the alphabetical topical index at the back of a print volume.

**instructions**

(instructions)

each  
list  
item  
is a  
step  
in a  
sequ  
ence  
of  
instr  
uctio  
ns,  
as in  
a  
recip  
e.

**litany**

(lita  
ny)  
each  
list  
item  
is  
one  
of a  
sequ  
ence  
of  
petit  
ions,  
supp  
licati  
ons  
or  
invo  
catio  
ns,  
typic  
ally  
in a  
relig  
ious  
ritua  
l.

**syllogis  
m**

(syll

ogis  
m)  
each  
list  
item  
is  
part  
of an  
argu  
ment  
consi  
sting  
of  
two  
or  
more  
prop  
ositi  
ons  
and  
a  
final  
conc  
lusio  
n  
deriv  
ed  
from  
them

**Note** Previous  
versions  
of these  
Guideline  
s  
recomme  
nded the  
use of  
*type* on  
<list> to  
encode  
the  
renderin  
g or  
appearan  
ce of a  
list  
(whether

it was  
bulleted,  
numbered,  
etc.).  
The  
current  
recommendation is  
to use  
the *rend*  
or *style*  
attributes  
for these  
aspects  
of a list,  
while  
using  
*type* for  
the more  
appropriate  
task of  
characterizing  
the  
nature of  
the  
content  
of a list.

The  
formal  
syntax of  
the  
element  
declarations  
allows  
<label>  
tags to be  
omitted  
from lists  
tagged  
<*list*  
*type="gross"*>;  
this is  
however  
a  
semantic

error.

**Member of  
Contained by**

model.listLike  
core: desc item note p title  
header: change licence revisionDesc  
sourceDesc  
textstructure: body

**May contain  
Note**

core: desc item note  
May contain an optional heading  
followed by a series of items, or a  
series of label and item pairs, the  
latter being optionally preceded by one  
or two specialized headings.

**Example**

```
<list rend="numbered">
  <item>a butcher</item>
  <item>a baker</item>
  <item>a candlestick maker, with
    <list rend="bulleted">
      <item>rings on his fingers</item>
      <item>bells on his toes</item>
    </list>
  </item>
</list>
```

**Example**

```
<list rend="bulleted" type="syllogism"
>
  <item>All Cretans are liars.</item>
  <item>Epimenides is a Cretan.</
item>
  <item>ERGO Epimenides is a liar.</
item>
</list>
```

**Example**

```
<list rend="simple" type="litany">
  <item>God save us from drought.</
item>
  <item>God save us from pestilence.</
item>
  <item>God save us from wickedness i
n high places.</item>
  <item>Praise be to God.</item>
</list>
```

**Example**

The following example treats the short  
numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal  
codes as lists of items. The text is from  
an ordinance of King Athelstan (924-  
939):

```
<div1 type="section">
  <head>Athelstan's Ordinance</
head>
```

```

<list rend="numbered">
  <item n="1">Concerning thieves. Fir
st, that no thief is to be spared who is c
aught with
    the stolen goods, [if he is] over twel
ve years and [if the value of the goods i
s] over
    eightpence.
  <list rend="numbered">
    <item n="1.1">And if anyone does s
pare one, he is to pay for the thief with
his
    wergild — and the thief is to be n
o nearer a settlement on that account
— or to
    clear himself by an oath of that a
mount.</item>
    <item n="1.2">If, however, he [the t
hief] wishes to defend himself or to esc
ape, he is
    not to be spared [whether younge
r or older than twelve].</item>
    <item n="1.3">If a thief is put into
prison, he is to be in prison 40 days, an
d he may
    then be redeemed with 120 shilli
ngs; and the kindred are to stand suret
y for him
    that he will desist for ever.</
item>
    <item n="1.4">And if he steals afte
r that, they are to pay for him with his
wergild,
    or to bring him back there.</
item>
    <item n="1.5">And if he steals afte
r that, they are to pay for him with his
wergild,
    whether to the king or to him to
whom it rightly belongs; and everyone
of those who
    supported him is to pay 120 shilli
ngs to the king as a fine.</item>
  </list>
</item>
  <item n="2">Concerning lordless me
n. And we pronounced about these lord
less men, from whom

```

no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to fetch back such a

person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.

<list rend="numbered">

<item n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that appointed day,

he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him is to strike him

down as a thief.</item>

<item n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him with his wergild

or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>

</list>

</item>

<item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses justice and upholds

his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the value of the goods and

120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he demands justice as

often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have done, if he had

refused him justice.

<list rend="numbered">

<item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his slave, and it becomes

known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his wergild on the first

occasion if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all that he owns.</item>

<item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our reeves, who has been

an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to be liable to the same

```

e.</item>
</list>
</item>
<item n="4">Concerning treachery to
o a lord. And we have pronounced conc
erning treachery to
    a lord, that he [who is accused] is to
forfeit his life if he cannot deny it or is
    afterwards convicted at the three-
fold ordeal.</item>
</list>
</div1>

```

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

## Example

```

<p>These decrees, most blessed Pope
Hadrian, we propounded in the public
council ... and they
    confirmed them in our hand in your st
ead with the sign of the Holy Cross, an
d afterwards
    inscribed with a careful pen on the pa
per of this page, affixing thus the sign
of the Holy
Cross.
<list rend="simple">
    <item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of Go
d archbishop of the holy church of York
, have
        subscribed to the pious and catholic
validity of this document with the sign
of the Holy
Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people
across the Humber, consenting have su
bscribed with
        the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the chur
ch of Hexham, rejoicing have subscrib
ed with the
        sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the churc
h of Lindisfarne, obeying have subscrib
ed with the
        sign of the Holy Cross.</item>

```



```

    <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with devout will.</item>
    <item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>
    <item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  </list>
</p>

```

## Schematron

```

<sch:rule context="tei:list[@type='gloss']">
  <sch:assert test="tei:label">The content of a "gloss" list should include a sequence of one or more pairs of a label element followed by an item element</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

```

## Content model

```

<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <elementRef key="desc" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate>
      <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1">
        <elementRef key="item"/>
        <classRef key="model.global" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
      </sequence>
      <sequence>
        <elementRef key="headLabel" minOccurs="0"/>
        <elementRef key="headItem" minOccurs="0"/>
        <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"

```

```

minOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="label"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
  <elementRef key="item"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element list
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type
  {
    "gloss" | "index" | "instructions" | "li
tany" | "syllogism"
  }?,
  (
    ( tei_model.divTop | tei_model.glob
al | tei_desc* )*,
    (
      ( ( tei_item, tei_model.global* )+ )
      | (
        headLabel?,
        headItem?,
        ( ( label, tei_model.global*, tei_i
tem, tei_model.global* )+ )
      )
    ),
    ( ( tei_model.divBottom, tei_model.
global* )*)
  )
}

```

)  
}

## <listBibl>

**<listBibl>** (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.  
[[3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References](#) [2.2.7. The Source Description](#) [16.3.2. Declarable Elements](#)]

### Module

core

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.declarable
  - *@default*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

### Member of

### Contained by

model.biblLike

core: desc item listBibl note p title

header: change licence sourceDesc

taxonomy

namesdates: event org person place

textstructure: body

**May contain  
Example**

```
core: bibl desc listBibl
<listBibl>
  <head>Works consulted</head>
  <bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: F
eminist Companion to
  Literature in English (Yale, 1990)
</bibl>
  <biblStruct>
    <analytic>
      <title>The Interesting story of the C
hildren in the Wood</title>
    </analytic>
    <monogr>
      <title>The Penny Histories</title>
      <author>Victor E Neuberg</
author>
      <imprint>
        <publisher>OUP</publisher>
        <date>1968</date>
      </imprint>
    </monogr>
  </biblStruct>
</listBibl>
```

**Schematron**

```
<sch:pattern is-a="declarable">
  <sch:param name="tde" value="tei:lis
tBibl"/> </sch:pattern>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.headLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
    <elementRef key="desc"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.milestoneLike
"
        maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
      <elementRef key="relation" maxOcc
urs="1"
        minOccurs="1"/>
      <elementRef key="listRelation"
        maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
    </alternate>
  <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="1">
```

```

<classRef key="model.biblLike"
  maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
  minOccurs="0">
  <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"
    maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
  <elementRef key="relation"
    maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
  <elementRef key="listRelation"
    maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element listBibl
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.declarable.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  (
    tei_model.headLike*,
    tei_desc*,
    ( tei_model.milestoneLike | relation
    | listRelation )*,
    (
      (
        tei_model.biblLike+,
        ( tei_model.milestoneLike | relation
        | listRelation )*
      )+
    )
  )
}

```

## <listChange>

**<listChange>** groups a number of change descriptions associated with either the creation of a source text or the revision of an encoded text. [[2.6. The Revision Description 12.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions](#)]

### Module

header

### Attributes

- att.global
- @xml:id

- *@n*
- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:base*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

ordered indicates whether the ordering of its child `<change>` elements is to be considered significant or not.  
**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** `teidata.truthValue`  
**Default** `true`

**Contained by**  
**May contain**

**Note**

header: `listChange revisionDesc`  
 core: `desc`  
 header: `change listChange`  
 When this element appears within the `<creation>` element it documents the set of revision campaigns or stages identified during the evolution of the original text. When it appears within the `<revisionDesc>` element, it documents only changes made during

the evolution of the encoded representation of that text.

### Example

```
<revisionDesc>
  <listChange>
    <change when="1991-11-11" who="
#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
    <change when="1991-11-02" who="
#MSM"> completed first draft </
change>
  </listChange>
</revisionDesc>
```

### Example

```
<profileDesc>
  <creation>
    <listChange ordered="true">
      <change xml:id="CHG-1">First stag
e, written in ink by a writer</change>
      <change xml:id="CHG-2">Second st
age, written in Goethe's hand using pe
ncil</change>
      <change xml:id="CHG-3">Fixation o
f the revised passages and further revi
sions by
        Goethe using ink</change>
      <change xml:id="CHG-4">Addition
of another stanza in a different hand,
        probably at a later stage</
change>
    </listChange>
  </creation>
</profileDesc>
```

### Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="desc"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="1">
      <elementRef key="listChange"/>
      <elementRef key="change"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

### Schema Declaration

```
element listChange
{
```

```

    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.sortable.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    attribute ordered { text }?,
    ( tei_desc*, ( tei_listChange | tei_change )+ )
}

```

## <listEvent>

**<listEvent>** (list of events) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable event. [[14.3.1. Basic Principles](#)]

### Module

namesdates

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
  - att.cmc
    - *@generatedBy*
  - att.declarable
    - *@default*
  - att.sortable
    - *@sortKey*
  - att.typed
    - *@type*
    - *@subtype*

**Member of**  
**Contained by**

model.eventLike model.listLike  
core: desc item note p title



**May contain**

**Example**

```
header: change licence sourceDesc
namesdates: event listEvent org
person place
textstructure: body
core: desc
namesdates: event listEvent
<listEvent>
  <head>Battles of the American Civil
  War: Kentucky</head>
  <event when="1861-09-19" xml:id="e
  vent01">
    <label>Barbourville</label>
    <desc>The Battle of Barbourville was
    one of the early engagements of
    the American Civil War. It occurred
    September 19, 1861, in Knox
    County, Kentucky during the campai
    gn known as the Kentucky Confederate
    Offensive. The battle is considered t
    he first Confederate victory in
    the commonwealth, and threw a sca
    re into Federal commanders, who
    rushed troops to central Kentucky i
    n an effort to repel the invasion,
    which was finally thwarted at the <
    ref target="#event02">Battle of
    Camp Wildcat</ref> in October.</
    desc>
  </event>
  <event when="1861-10-21" xml:id="e
  vent02">
    <label>Camp Wild Cat</label>
    <desc>The Battle of Camp Wildcat (a
    lso known as Wildcat Mountain and Ca
    mp
    Wild Cat) was one of the early enga
    gements of the American Civil
    War. It occurred October 21, 1861, i
    n northern Laurel County, Kentucky
    during the campaign known as the
    Kentucky Confederate Offensive. The
    battle is considered one of the very
    first Union victories, and marked
    the first engagement of troops in th
    e commonwealth of Kentucky.</desc>
  </event>
  <event from="1864-06-11" to="1864-
  06-12">
```

## Schematron

## Content model

```
xml:id="event03">
  <label>Cynthiana</label>
  <desc>The Battle of Cynthiana (or Keller's Bridge) was an engagement
    during the American Civil War that
    was fought on June 11 and 12, 1864,
    in Harrison County, Kentucky, near the town of Cynthiana. A part of
    Confederate Brigadier General John Hunt Morgan's 1864 Raid into
    Kentucky, the battle resulted in a victory by Union forces over the
    raiders and saved the town from capture.</desc>
</event>
</listEvent>
<sch:pattern is-a="declarable">
  <sch:param name="tde" value="tei:listEvent"/> </sch:pattern>

<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.headLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="desc"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0">
      <elementRef key="relation" maxOccurs="1"
        minOccurs="1"/>
      <elementRef key="listRelation"
        maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.eventLike"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0">
        <elementRef key="relation"
          maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="listRelation"
          maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

```

</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element listEvent
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.declarable.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  (
    tei_model.headLike*,
    tei_desc*,
    ( relation | listRelation )*,
    ( ( tei_model.eventLike+, ( relation
| listRelation )* )+ )
  )
}

```

## <listOrg>

**<listOrg>** (list of organizations) contains a list of elements, each of which provides information about an identifiable organization. [[14.2.2. Organizational Names](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```

namesdates
• att.global
  • @xml:id
  • @n
  • @xml:lang
  • @xml:base
  • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp
    • @synch
    • @sameAs
    • @copyOf
    • @next
    • @prev
    • @exclude
    • @select
  • att.global.rendition
    • @rend
    • @style
    • @rendition
  • att.global.responsibility
    • @cert

```

- *@resp*
- att.global.source
- *@source*
- att.cmc
- *@generatedBy*
- att.declarable
- *@default*
- att.sortable
- *@sortKey*
- att.typed
- *@type*
- *@subtype*

**Member of  
Contained by**

model.listLike model.orgPart  
core: desc item note p title  
corpus: particDesc  
header: change licence sourceDesc  
namesdates: listOrg org  
textstructure: body

**May contain**

core: desc

**Note**

The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of organizations of a particular type if convenient.

**Example**

```
<listOrg>
<head>Libyans</head>
<org>
  <orgName>Adyrmachidae</
orgName>
  <desc>These people have, in most po
ints, the same customs as the Egyptian
s, but
  use the costume of the Libyans. The
ir women wear on each leg a ring mad
e of
  bronze [...]</desc>
</org>
<org>
  <orgName>Nasamonians</
orgName>
  <desc>In summer they leave their flo
cks and herds upon the sea-shore, and
go up
  the country to a place called Augila,
where they gather the dates from the
palms [...]</desc>
</org>
<org>
```

## Schematron

## Content model

```
<orgName>Garamantians</orgName>
<desc>[...] avoid all society or intercourse with their fellow-men, have no weapon of war, and do not know how to defend themselves. [...]</desc>
<!-- ... -->
</org>
</listOrg>
<sch:pattern is-a="declarable">
<sch:param name="tde" value="tei:listOrg"/> </sch:pattern>

<content>
<sequence>
<classRef key="model.headLike"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
<elementRef key="desc"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<elementRef key="relation" maxOccurs="1"
minOccurs="1"/>
<elementRef key="listRelation"
maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
</alternate>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="1">
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="1">
<elementRef key="org" maxOccurs="1"
minOccurs="1"/>
<elementRef key="listOrg" maxOccurs="1"
minOccurs="1"/>
</alternate>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<elementRef key="relation"
maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
<elementRef key="listRelation"
maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
```

```

</sequence>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element listOrg
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.declarable.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  (
    tei_model.headLike*,
    tei_desc*,
    ( relation | listRelation )*,
    ( ( ( tei_org | tei_listOrg )+, ( relation
n | listRelation )* )+ )
  )
}

```

## <listPerson>

**<listPerson>** (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source. [[14.3.2. The Person Element](#) [16.2. Contextual Information](#) [2.4. The Profile Description](#) [16.3.2. Declarable Elements](#)]

### Module

namesdates

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@cert</i></li> <li>• <i>@resp</i></li> <li>• att.global.source</li> <li>• <i>@source</i></li> <li>• att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@generatedBy</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@default</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@sortKey</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@type</i></li> <li>• <i>@subtype</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	model.listLike model.orgPart
<b>Contained by</b>	core: desc item note p title
	corpus: particDesc
	header: change licence sourceDesc
	namesdates: event listPerson org
	textstructure: body
<b>May contain</b>	core: desc
	namesdates: listPerson org person
<b>Note</b>	The <i>type</i> attribute may be used to distinguish lists of people of a particular type if convenient.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;listPerson type="respondents"&gt;   &lt;personGrp xml:id="PXXX"/&gt;   &lt;person age="mid" sex="2" xml:id="P1234"/&gt;   &lt;person age="mid" sex="1" xml:id="P4332"/&gt; &lt;/listPerson&gt; &lt;listRelation&gt;   &lt;relation mutual="#P1234 #P4332"     name="spouse" type="personal"/&gt; &lt;/listRelation&gt; </pre>
<b>Schematron</b>	<pre> &lt;sch:pattern is-a="declarable"&gt;   &lt;sch:param name="tde"     value="tei:listPerson"/&gt; &lt;/sch:pattern&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.headLike"       maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="desc"       maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/&gt;   &lt;/sequence&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>

```

="0"/>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="0">
    <elementRef key="relation" maxOccurs="1"
      minOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="listRelation"
      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="1">
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.personLike"
        maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
      <elementRef key="listPerson"
        maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="0">
      <elementRef key="relation"
        maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
      <elementRef key="listRelation"
        maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element listPerson
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.declarable.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  (
    tei_model.headLike*,
    tei_desc*,
    ( relation | listRelation )*,
    (
      (
        ( tei_model.personLike | tei_list
          Person )+,
        ( relation | listRelation )*
      )+
    )
  )
}

```



)  
}

## <listPlace>

**<listPlace>** (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them. [[2.2.7. The Source Description 14.3.4. Places](#)]

### Module

namesdates

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.declarable
  - *@default*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

### Member of

### Contained by

model.listLike model.orgPart  
 core: desc item note p title  
 corpus: settingDesc  
 header: change licence sourceDesc  
 namesdates: event listPlace org place  
 textstructure: body

**May contain**

**Example**

**Schematron**

**Content model**

```
core: desc
namesdates: listPlace place
<listPlace type="offshoreIslands">
  <place>
    <placeName>La roche qui pleure</
placeName>
  </place>
  <place>
    <placeName>Ile aux cerfs</
placeName>
  </place>
</listPlace>
<sch:pattern is-a="declarable">
  <sch:param name="tde" value="tei:lis
tPlace"/> </sch:pattern>

<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.headLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
    <elementRef key="desc"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="0">
      <elementRef key="relation" maxOcc
urs="1"
        minOccurs="1"/>
      <elementRef key="listRelation"
        maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="1">
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="1">
        <classRef key="model.placeLike"
          maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="listPlace"
          maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
      </alternate>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="0">
        <elementRef key="relation"
          maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="listRelation"
          maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

```

</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element listPlace
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.declarable.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  (
    tei_model.headLike*,
    tei_desc*,
    ( relation | listRelation )*,
    (
      (
        ( tei_model.placeLike | tei_listPl
ace )+,
        ( relation | listRelation )*
      )+
    )
  )
}

```

### <name>

**<name>** (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [[3.6.1. Referring Strings](#)]

#### Module

#### Attributes

```

core
• att.global
  • @xml:id
  • @n
  • @xml:lang
  • @xml:base
  • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp
    • @synch
    • @sameAs
    • @copyOf
    • @next
    • @prev
    • @exclude
    • @select
  • att.global.rendition
    • @rend

```

- *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*
    - *@to-custom*
    - *@datingPoint*
    - *@datingMethod*
  - att.datable.iso
    - *@when-iso*
    - *@notBefore-iso*
    - *@notAfter-iso*
    - *@from-iso*
    - *@to-iso*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*
    - *@to*
- att.editLike
  - *@evidence*
  - *@instant*
- att.personal
  - *@full*
  - *@sort*
  - att.naming
    - *@role*
    - *@nymRef*
    - att.canonical
      - *@key*
      - *@ref*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

**Member of**

model.nameLike.agent  
model.personPart

**Contained by**

core: bibl date desc editor item name  
note p pubPlace publisher resp  
respStmt term title  
header: catDesc change edition licence  
namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
eventName forename gender  
nameLink org person place placeName  
roleName surname

**May contain**

core: date name note ptr term title  
header: idno  
namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
eventName forename nameLink  
placeName roleName surname  
character data

**Note**

Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with <persName>, <placeName>, or <orgName>, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.

**Example**

```
<name type="person">Thomas Hoccle  
ve</name>  
<name type="place">Villingaholt</  
name>  
<name type="org">Vetus Latina Instit  
ut</name>  
<name ref="#HOC001" type="person"  
>Occleve</name>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>  
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>  
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element name  
{  
  tei_att.global.attributes,  
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,  
  tei_att.dataable.attributes,  
  tei_att.editLike.attributes,  
  tei_att.personal.attributes,  
  tei_att.typed.attributes,  
  tei_macro.phraseSeq  
}
```

**<nameLink>**

**<nameLink>** (name link) contains a connecting phrase or link used within a

name but not regarded as part of it, such as *van der* or *of*. [[14.2.1. Personal Names](#)]

## Module

## Attributes

namesdates

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:base
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.linking
    - @corresp
    - @synch
    - @sameAs
    - @copyOf
    - @next
    - @prev
    - @exclude
    - @select
  - att.global.rendition
    - @rend
    - @style
    - @rendition
  - att.global.responsibility
    - @cert
    - @resp
  - att.global.source
    - @source
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy
- att.typed
  - @type
  - @subtype

model.persNamePart

core: bibl date desc editor item name  
note p pubPlace publisher resp term  
title

header: catDesc change edition licence

namesdates: affiliation bloc country

eventName forename gender

nameLink org placeName roleName

surname

core: date name note ptr term title

header: idno

namesdates: affiliation bloc country

eventName forename nameLink

placeName roleName surname

character data

## Member of

## Contained by

## May contain

**Example**

```

<persName>
  <forename>Frederick</forename>
  <nameLink>van der</nameLink>
  <surname>Tronck</surname>
</persName>

```

**Example**

```

<persName>
  <forename>Alfred</forename>
  <nameLink>de</nameLink>
  <surname>Musset</surname>
</persName>

```

**Content model**

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

```

**Schema Declaration**

```

element nameLink
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}

```

**<note>**

**<note>** (note) contains a note or annotation. [[3.9.1. Notes and Simple Annotation](#) [2.2.6. The Notes Statement](#) [3.12.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language](#) [10.3.5.4. Notes within Entries](#)]

**Module**

core

**Attributes**

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*

- *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.anchoring
  - *@anchored*
  - *@targetEnd*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.placement
  - *@place*
- att.pointing
  - *@targetLang*
  - *@target*
  - *@evaluate*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

**Member of  
Contained by**

model.noteLike  
core: bibl date editor item list name  
note p pubPlace publisher resp  
respStmt term title  
header: change edition licence  
namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
event eventName forename gender  
nameLink org person place placeName  
roleName surname

**May contain**

textstructure: body text  
core: bibl date desc list listBibl name  
note p ptr term title  
header: idno  
namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
eventName forename listEvent listOrg  
listPerson listPlace nameLink  
placeName roleName surname  
character data

**Example**

In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":  
And yet it is not only  
in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the  
painterly <note place="bottom" resp=



```
"#MDMH"
type="gloss">
  <term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</
term>. This word has, in the German, t
wo
  distinct meanings, one objective, a qu
ality residing in the object,
  the other subjective, a mode of appreh
ension and creation. To avoid
  confusion, they have been distinguishe
d in English as
  <mentioned>picturesque</
mentioned> and
  <mentioned>painterly</mentioned> r
espectively.
</note> style of the
  Dutch genre painters of the seventeen
th century that drapery has this
  psychological significance.
```

```
<!-- elsewhere in the document -->
<respStmt xml:id="MDMH">
  <resp>translation from German to En
glish</resp>
  <name>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mac
kie</name>
</respStmt>
```

For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header.

The global *n* attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

```
Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matr
iarch of the
  family during the second half of the el
eventh century, <note anchored="true"
  n="126"> The
  alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mot
her in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a r
eference to
  Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 an
d 54. </note> is well known from Geni
za documents
```

## Example

published by Jacob Mann.  
 However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

## Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element note
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.anchoring.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.placement.attributes,
  tei_att.pointing.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  tei_att.written.attributes,
  tei_macro.specialPara
}
```

## <org>

**<org>** (organization) provides information about an identifiable organization such as a business, a tribe, or any other grouping of people. [[14.3.3. Organizational Data](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```
namespaces
• att.global
  • @xml:id
  • @n
  • @xml:lang
  • @xml:base
  • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp
    • @synch
    • @sameAs
    • @copyOf
    • @next
    • @prev
    • @exclude
    • @select
  • att.global.rendition
```

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@rend</i></li> <li>• <i>@style</i></li> <li>• <i>@rendition</i></li> <li>• att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@cert</i></li> <li>• <i>@resp</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@source</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.editLike <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@evidence</i></li> <li>• <i>@instant</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@sortKey</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@type</i></li> <li>• <i>@subtype</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
role	<p>specifies a primary role or classification for the organization.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-∞</p> <p>occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>Note</b> Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as <i>artist</i>, <i>employer</i>, <i>familyGroup</i>, or</p>

*political Party, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <desc> for each <valItem> element in the schema specification of the project's customization.*

**Member of Contained by**

**May contain**

**Example**

model.personLike  
 corpus: particDesc  
 namesdates: event listOrg listPerson  
 org  
 core: bibl desc listBibl name note p ptr  
 header: idno  
 namesdates: bloc country event  
 eventName forename listEvent listOrg  
 listPerson listPlace nameLink org  
 person place placeName roleName  
 surname  
 <org xml:id="JAMs">  
 <orgName>Justified Ancients of Mum  
 mu</orgName>  
 <desc>An underground anarchist coll  
 ective spearheaded by  
 <persName>Hagbard Celine</  
 persName>, who fight the Illuminati  
 from a golden submarine, the <name

## Content model

```
>Leif Ericson</name>
</desc>
<bibl>
  <author>Robert Shea</author>
  <author>Robert Anton Wilson</
author>
  <title>The Illuminatus! Trilogy</
title>
</bibl>
</org>

<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.headLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
    <alternate>
      <classRef key="model.pLike"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
        <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
        <classRef key="model.nameLike"/>
        <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>
        <classRef key="model.orgPart"/>
        <classRef key="model.milestoneLik
e"/>
      </alternate>
    </alternate>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
      <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>
      <elementRef key="link"/>
    </alternate>
    <classRef key="model.personLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element org
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
```

```

tei_att.editLike.attributes,
tei_att.sortable.attributes,
tei_att.typed.attributes,
attribute role { list { + } }?,
(
    tei_model.headLike*,
    (
        tei_model.pLike*
        | (
            tei_model.labelLike
            | tei_model.nameLike
            | tei_model.placeLike
            | tei_model.orgPart
            | tei_model.milestoneLike
        )*
    ),
    (
        tei_model.noteLike
        | tei_model.biblLike
        | tei_model.ptrLike
        | linkGrp
        | link
    )*,
    tei_model.personLike*
)
}

```

## <p>

**<p>** (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [[3.1. Paragraphs](#) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

#### core

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:base
  - @xml:space
- att.global.linking
  - @corresp
  - @synch
  - @sameAs
  - @copyOf
  - @next
  - @prev
  - @exclude
  - @select
- att.global.rendition

- *@rend*
- *@style*
- *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.declaring
  - *@decls*
- att.fragmentable
  - *@part*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

**Member of  
Contained by**

model.pLike  
core: item note  
corpus: particDesc settingDesc  
header: availability change editionStmt  
encodingDesc licence publicationStmt  
sourceDesc

**May contain**

namesdates: event org person place  
textstructure: body  
core: bibl date desc list listBibl name  
note ptr term title  
header: idno  
namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
eventName forename listEvent listOrg  
listPerson listPlace nameLink  
placeName roleName surname  
character data

**Example**

```
<p>Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is
blood on your axe,</q> she said. <q>
What have you
done?</q>
</p>
<p>
  <q>I have now arranged that you can
be married a second time,</q> replied
Thjostolf.
</p>
<p>
  <q>Then you must mean that Thorvald
is dead,</q> she said.
</p>
<p>
  <q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And
```

now you must think up some plan for me.</q>

</p>

## Schematron

<sch:rule context="tei:p">

<sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:ab or ancestor::tei:p) and

not( ancestor::tei:floatingText |

parent::tei:exemplum | parent::tei:item

| parent::tei:note | parent::tei:q |

parent::tei:quote | parent::tei:remarks |

parent::tei:said | parent::tei:sp |

parent::tei:stage | parent::tei:cell |

parent::tei:figure )"> Abstract model

violation: Paragraphs may not occur

inside other paragraphs or ab

elements. </sch:report> </sch:rule>

## Schematron

<sch:rule context="tei:l//tei:p">

<sch:assert test="ancestor::tei:floatingText | parent::tei:figure |

parent::tei:note"> Abstract model

violation: Metrical lines may not

contain higher-level structural

elements such as div, p, or ab, unless p

is a child of figure or note, or is a

descendant of floatingText.

</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

## Content model

<content>

<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>

>

</content>

## Schema Declaration

element p

{

tei\_att.global.attributes,

tei\_att.cmc.attributes,

tei\_att.declaring.attributes,

tei\_att.fragmentable.attributes,

tei\_att.written.attributes,

tei\_macro.paraContent

}

## <particDesc>

**<particDesc>** (participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in any kind of text or other persons named or otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [[16.2. Contextual](#)



## [Information\]](#)

### Module

### Attributes

**Member of**  
**Contained by**  
**May contain**

### Note

### Example

corpus

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
  - att.declarable
    - *@default*

model.profileDescPart

header: profileDesc

core: p

namesdates: listOrg listPerson org

person

May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a structured list of persons and person groups, with an optional formal specification of any relationships amongst them.

<particDesc>

<listPerson>

<person age="mid" sex="2" xml:id="P-1234">

<p>Female informant, well-educated, born in

Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French fluently

ntly.

```
Socio-Economic status B2.</p>
</person>
<person sex="1" xml:id="P-4332">
  <persName>
    <surname>Hancock</surname>
    <forename>Antony</forename>
    <forename>Aloysius</forename>
    <forename>St John</forename>
  </persName>
  <residence notAfter="1959">
    <address>
      <street>Railway Cuttings</street>
      <settlement>East Cheam</
settlement>
    </address>
  </residence>
  <occupation>comedian</
occupation>
</person>
<listRelation>
  <relation mutual="#P-1234 #P-
4332"
    name="spouse" type="personal"/>
</listRelation>
</listPerson>
</particDesc>
This example shows both a very simple
person description, and a very detailed
one, using some of the more
specialized elements from the module
for Names and Dates.
<sch:pattern is-a="declarable">
  <sch:param name="tde"
value="tei:particDesc"/>
</sch:pattern>
```

## Schematron

## Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="1"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.personLike"/
>
    <elementRef key="listPerson"/>
    <elementRef key="listOrg"/>
```

```

</alternate>
</alternate>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element particDesc
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.declarable.attributes,
  (
    tei_model.pLike+
    | ( tei_model.personLike | tei_listPers
on | tei_listOrg )+
  )
}

```

## <person>

**<person>** (person) provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source. [[14.3.2. The Person Element](#) [16.2.2. The Participant Description](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```

namesdates
• att.global
  • @xml:id
  • @n
  • @xml:lang
  • @xml:base
  • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp
    • @synch
    • @sameAs
    • @copyOf
    • @next
    • @prev
    • @exclude
    • @select
  • att.global.rendition
    • @rend
    • @style
    • @rendition
  • att.global.responsibility
    • @cert
    • @resp
  • att.global.source
    • @source
• att.editLike

```

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@evidence</i></li> <li>• <i>@instant</i></li> <li>• att.sortable</li> <li>• <i>@sortKey</i></li> </ul>	
role		<p>specifies a primary role or classification for the person.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-∞</p> <p>occurrences of teidata .enumerated separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>Note</b> Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as <i>artist, employer, author, relative,</i> or <i>servant,</i> each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically</p>

	be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification.
sex	<p>specifies the sex of the person.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata.sex separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>Note</b> Values for this attribute may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.</p>
gender	<p>specifies the gender of the person.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata.gender separated by whitespace</p>

**Note** ce  
Values  
for this  
attribute  
may be  
defined  
locally by  
a project,  
or they  
may refer  
to an  
external  
standard.

age

specifies an age  
group for the  
person.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.e  
numerate  
d

**Note** Values  
for this  
attribute  
may be  
locally  
defined  
by a  
project,  
using  
arbitrary  
keywords  
such as  
*infant*,  
*child*,  
*teen*,  
*adult*, or  
*senior*,  
each of  
which  
should be  
associate  
d with a  
definition  
. Such  
local  
definition  
s will

	typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification.
<b>Member of Contained by</b>	model.personLike
<b>May contain</b>	corpus: particDesc namesdates: event listPerson org core: bibl listBibl name note p ptr header: idno namesdates: affiliation event gender listEvent
<b>Note</b>	May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more specific demographic elements drawn from the model.personPart class.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;person age="adult" sex="F"&gt;   &lt;p&gt;Female respondent, well-     educated, born in Shropshire UK, 12 Ja     n 1950, of unknown occupation. Speak     s French fluently. Socio-Economic     status B2.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/person&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;person age="immortal" role="god"   sex="intersex"&gt;   &lt;persName&gt;Hermaphroditos&lt;/   persName&gt;   &lt;persName xml:lang="grc"&gt;Ἑρμαφρό   διτος&lt;/persName&gt; &lt;/person&gt;</pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;person role="poet" sex="M" xml:id=   "Ovi01"&gt;   &lt;persName xml:lang="en"&gt;Ovid&lt;/   persName&gt;   &lt;persName xml:lang="la"&gt;Publius Ov   idius Naso&lt;/persName&gt;   &lt;birth when="-0044-03-20"&gt; 20 Marc   h 43 BC &lt;placeName&gt;     &lt;settlement type="city"&gt;Sulmona&lt;/</pre>

```

settlement>
  <country key="IT">Italy</country>
</placeName>
</birth>
<death notAfter="0018" notBefore="
0017">17 or 18 AD <placeName>
  <settlement type="city">Tomis (Con
stanta)</settlement>
  <country key="RO">Romania</
country>
  </placeName>
</death>
</person>

```

### Example

The following exemplifies an adaptation of the vCard standard to indicate an unknown gender for a fictional character.

```

<person gender="U" xml:id="ariel">
  <persName>Ariel</persName>
  <note>Character in <title level="m">
The Tempest</title>.</note>
</person>

```

### Example

This example demonstrates the use of a <ref> element to provide more information about a person.

```

<person age="G2" role="author" sex="F"
xml:id="W0212">
  <birth when="1787"/>
  <death when="1855"/>
  <persName type="main">Mitford, M
ary Russell (1787-1855)</persName>
  <persName resp="#Nicoll">MITFOR
D, MARY RUSSELL</persName>
  <listBibl type="lacyTitles">
    <desc>Lacy's Acting Editions</
desc>
    <bibl>
      <ref target="lacy:L1280">Foscari</
ref>
    </bibl>
    <bibl>
      <ref target="lacy:L1337">Rienzi</
ref>
    </bibl>
  </listBibl>
  <listRef type="seeAlso">
    <ref target="https://

```



```

www.victorianresearch.org/atcl/
show_author.php?aid=1386">ATCL</
ref>
  <ref target="https://doi.org/
10.1093/ref:odnb/18859">ODNB</
ref>
  <ref target="https://
en.wikipedia.org/wiki/
Mary_Russell_Mitford">Wikipedia</
ref>
  <ref target="https://
digitalmitford.org">Digital Mitford</
ref>
</listRef>
</person>

```

## Content model

```

<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="1"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.personPart"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
    </alternate>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element person
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.editLike.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute role { list { + } }?,
  attribute sex { list { + } }?,
  attribute gender { list { + } }?,
  attribute age { text }?,
  (
    tei_model.pLike+
    | ( tei_model.personPart | tei_model.
global | tei_model.ptrLike )*
  )
}

```

## <place>

**<place>** (place) contains data about a geographic location. [[14.3.4. Places](#)]

### Module

namesdates

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.editLike
  - *@evidence*
  - *@instant*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

### Member of

model.placeLike

### Contained by

corpus: settingDesc

### May contain

namesdates: event listPlace org place  
core: bibl desc listBibl name note p ptr  
header: idno

namesdates: bloc country event  
listEvent listPlace place placeName

### Example

```
<place>  
  <country>Lithuania</country>  
  <country xml:lang="lt">Lietuva</country>  
</place>
```

## Content model

```
<settlement>Vilnius</settlement>
</place>
<place>
  <settlement>Kaunas</settlement>
</place>
</place>

<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.headLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    <alternate>
      <classRef key="model.pLike"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="0">
        <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
        <classRef key="model.placeStateLike"/>
        <classRef key="model.eventLike"/>
        <elementRef key="name"/>
      </alternate>
    </alternate>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
      <elementRef key="idno"/>
      <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>
      <elementRef key="link"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>
      <elementRef key="listPlace"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element place
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.editLike.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
```

```

tei_att.typed.attributes,
(
  tei_model.headLike*,
  (
    tei_model.pLike*
    | (
      tei_model.labelLike
      | tei_model.placeStateLike
      | tei_model.eventLike
      | tei_name
    )*
  ),
  (
    tei_model.noteLike
    | tei_model.biblLike
    | tei_model.ptrLike
    | tei_idno
    | linkGrp
    | link
  )*,
  ( tei_model.placeLike | tei_listPlace
)*
)
}

```

## <placeName>

**<placeName>** (place name) contains an absolute or relative place name.  
[\[14.2.3. Place Names\]](#)

### Module

### Attributes

- namesdates
- att.global
    - *@xml:id*
    - *@n*
    - *@xml:lang*
    - *@xml:base*
    - *@xml:space*
    - att.global.linking
      - *@corresp*
      - *@synch*
      - *@sameAs*
      - *@copyOf*
      - *@next*
      - *@prev*
      - *@exclude*
      - *@select*
    - att.global.rendition
      - *@rend*
      - *@style*

- *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*
    - *@to-custom*
    - *@datingPoint*
    - *@datingMethod*
  - att.datable.iso
    - *@when-iso*
    - *@notBefore-iso*
    - *@notAfter-iso*
    - *@from-iso*
    - *@to-iso*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*
    - *@to*
- att.editLike
  - *@evidence*
  - *@instant*
- att.personal
  - *@full*
  - *@sort*
- att.naming
  - *@role*
  - *@nymRef*
- att.canonical
  - *@key*
  - *@ref*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

**Member of**  
**Contained by**

model.placeNamePart  
core: bibl date desc editor item name  
note p pubPlace publisher resp term

	title header: catDesc change edition licence namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename gender nameLink org place placeName roleName surname core: date name note ptr term title header: idno namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename nameLink placeName roleName surname character data
<b>May contain</b>	
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;placeName&gt;   &lt;settlement&gt;Rochester&lt;/settlement&gt;   &lt;region&gt;New York&lt;/region&gt; &lt;/placeName&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;placeName&gt;   &lt;geogName&gt;Arrochar Alps&lt;/ geogName&gt;   &lt;region&gt;Argylshire&lt;/region&gt; &lt;/placeName&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;placeName&gt;   &lt;measure&gt;10 miles&lt;/measure&gt;   &lt;offset&gt;Northeast of&lt;/offset&gt;   &lt;settlement&gt;Attica&lt;/settlement&gt; &lt;/placeName&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element placeName {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.dataable.attributes,   tei_att.editLike.attributes,   tei_att.personal.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   tei_macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
<b>&lt;profileDesc&gt;</b>	
<b>&lt;profileDesc&gt;</b> (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants	

and their setting. [[2.4. The Profile Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](#)]

## Module

## Attributes

header

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

**Member of**  
**Contained by**  
**May contain**  
**Note**

model.teiHeaderPart

header: *teiHeader*

corpus: *particDesc settingDesc*

Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of *<profileDesc>* unless these are documenting multiple texts.

## Example

```
<profileDesc>
  <langUsage>
    <language ident="fr">French</
language>
  </langUsage>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issu
es</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
```

```

    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose degree="high" type="enter
tain"/>
    <purpose degree="medium" type="in
form"/>
  </textDesc>
  <settingDesc>
    <setting>
      <name>Paris, France</name>
      <time>Late 19th century</time>
    </setting>
  </settingDesc>
</profileDesc>

```

## Content model

```

<content>
  <classRef key="model.profileDescPart
"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element profileDesc { tei_att.global.att
ributes, tei_model.profileDescPart* }

```

## <ptr>

**<ptr>** (pointer) defines a pointer to another location. [[3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References](#) [17.1. Links](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```

core
  • att.global
    • @xml:id
    • @n
    • @xml:lang
    • @xml:base
    • @xml:space
    • att.global.linking
      • @corresp
      • @synch
      • @sameAs
      • @copyOf
      • @next
      • @prev
      • @exclude
      • @select
    • att.global.rendition
      • @rend

```



- *@style*
- *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.cReferencing
  - *@cRef*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.declaring
  - *@decls*
- att.internetMedia
  - *@mimeType*
- att.pointing
  - *@targetLang*
  - *@target*
  - *@evaluate*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

**Member of  
Contained by**

model.ptrLike  
 core: bibl date desc editor item name  
 note p pubPlace publisher resp term  
 title  
 header: catDesc change edition licence  
 publicationStmnt  
 namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
 event eventName forename gender  
 nameLink org person place placeName  
 roleName surname  
 Empty element  
 The *target* and *cRef* attributes are  
 mutually exclusive.

**May contain  
Note**

**Example**

**Schematron**

```
<ptr target="#p143 #p144"/>
<ptr target="http://www.tei-c.org"/>
<ptr cRef="1.3.4"/>
<sch:rule context="tei:ptr">
  <sch:report test="@target and
  @cRef">Only one of the attributes
  @target and @cRef may be supplied on
  <sch:name/>.</sch:report>
</sch:rule>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <empty/>
```

</content>

## Schema Declaration

```
element ptr
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cReferencing.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.declaring.attributes,
  tei_att.internetMedia.attributes,
  tei_att.pointing.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  empty
}
```

## <pubPlace>

**<pubPlace>** (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [[3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```
core
• att.global
  • @xml:id
  • @n
  • @xml:lang
  • @xml:base
  • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp
    • @synch
    • @sameAs
    • @copyOf
    • @next
    • @prev
    • @exclude
    • @select
  • att.global.rendition
    • @rend
    • @style
    • @rendition
  • att.global.responsibility
    • @cert
    • @resp
  • att.global.source
    • @source
• att.naming
  • @role
  • @nymRef
```

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• @key</li> <li>• @ref</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	model.imprintPart
<b>Contained by</b>	model.publicationStmtPart.detail
<b>May contain</b>	core: bibl header: publicationStmt core: date name note ptr term title header: idno namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename nameLink placeName roleName surname character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;publicationStmt&gt;   &lt;publisher&gt;Oxford University Press&lt;/ publisher&gt;   &lt;pubPlace&gt;Oxford&lt;/pubPlace&gt;   &lt;date&gt;1989&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/publicationStmt&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element pubPlace {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.naming.attributes,   tei_macro.phraseSeq } </pre>
<b>&lt;publicationStmt&gt;</b>	
<b>&lt;publicationStmt&gt;</b> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [ <a href="#">2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2. The File Description</a> ]	
<b>Module</b>	header
<b>Attributes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.global <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• @xml:id</li> <li>• @n</li> <li>• @xml:lang</li> <li>• @xml:base</li> <li>• @xml:space</li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.global.linking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• @corresp</li> <li>• @synch</li> <li>• @sameAs</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

- *@copyOf*
- *@next*
- *@prev*
- *@exclude*
- *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

**Contained by**  
**May contain**

**Note**

header: fileDesc

core: date p ptr pubPlace publisher

header: availability idno

Where a publication statement contains several members of the model.publicationStmtPart.agency or model.publicationStmtPart.detail classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order.

**Example**

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>C. Muquardt </
publisher>
  <pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig<
/pubPlace>
  <date when="1846"/>
</publicationStmt>
```

**Example**

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</
publisher>
  <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>
  <availability>
    <p>Available under licence only</p>
  </availability>
```

## Example

```
<date when="1992">1992</date>
</publicationStmt>
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Zea Books</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Lincoln, NE</pubPlace>
  <date>2017</date>
  <availability>
    <p>This is an open access work licen
sed under a Creative Commons Attribu
tion 4.0 International license.</p>
  </availability>
  <ptr target="http://
digitalcommons.unl.edu/zeabook/55"/>
</publicationStmt>
```

## Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.publicationSt
mtPart.agency"/>
      <classRef key="model.publicationSt
mtPart.detail"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccur
s="0"/>
    </sequence>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="1"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element publicationStmt
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
      (
        tei_model.publicationStmtPart.
agency,
        tei_model.publicationStmtPart.
detail*
      )+
    )
    | tei_model.pLike+
  )
}
```

## <publisher>

<publisher> (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [[3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](#) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

core

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:base
  - @xml:space
- att.global.linking
  - @corresp
  - @synch
  - @sameAs
  - @copyOf
  - @next
  - @prev
  - @exclude
  - @select
- att.global.rendition
  - @rend
  - @style
  - @rendition
- att.global.responsibility
  - @cert
  - @resp
- att.global.source
  - @source
- att.canonical
  - @key
  - @ref

### Member of

### Contained by

### May contain

model.imprintPart  
model.publicationStmtPart.agency  
core: bibl  
header: publicationStmt  
core: date name note ptr term title  
header: idno  
namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
eventName forename nameLink  
placeName roleName surname  
character data

### Note

Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page

## Example

```
<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</
publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

## Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element publisher
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.canonical.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

## <resp>

**<resp>** (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work. [[3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](#) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](#) [2.2.2. The Edition Statement](#) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](#)]

### Module

core

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*

- att.global.source
  - @source
- att.canonical
  - @key
  - @ref
- att.datable
  - @period
  - att.datable.custom
    - @when-custom
    - @notBefore-custom
    - @notAfter-custom
    - @from-custom
    - @to-custom
    - @datingPoint
    - @datingMethod
  - att.datable.iso
    - @when-iso
    - @notBefore-iso
    - @notAfter-iso
    - @from-iso
    - @to-iso
  - att.datable.w3c
    - @when
    - @notBefore
    - @notAfter
    - @from
    - @to

**Contained by**  
**May contain**

**Note**

core: respStmt  
 core: date name note ptr term title  
 header: idno  
 namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
 eventName forename nameLink  
 placeName roleName surname  
 character data  
 The attribute *ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form by referring directly to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at <http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html> for bibliographic usage.

**Example**

```
<respStmt>
  <resp ref="http://id.loc.gov/
  vocabulary/relators/
```



```
com.html">compiler</resp>
  <name>Edward Child</name>
</respStmt>
```

## Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.li
mited"/>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element resp
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.canonical.attributes,
  tei_att.dataable.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited
}
```

## <respStmt>

**<respStmt>** (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [[3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](#) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](#) [2.2.2. The Edition Statement](#) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](#)]

### Module

core

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility

**Member of  
Contained by**

**May contain  
Example**

**Example**

**Content model**

- *@cert*
- *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.canonical
  - *@key*
  - *@ref*

model.respLike  
core: bibl  
header: editionStmt titleStmt  
core: name note resp  
<respStmt>  
  <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp>  
  <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName>  
</respStmt>  
<respStmt>  
  <resp>converted to XML encoding</resp>  
  <name>Alan Morrison</name>  
</respStmt>

<content>  
  <sequence>  
    <alternate>  
      <sequence>  
        <elementRef key="resp"  
          maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  
        <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"  
          maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  
      </sequence>  
      <sequence>  
        <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"  
          maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  
        <elementRef key="resp"  
          maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  
      </sequence>  
    </alternate>  
    <elementRef key="note"  
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  
  </sequence>

```
="0"/>
</sequence>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element respStmt
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.canonical.attributes,
  (
    (
      ( tei_resp+, tei_model.nameLike.
agent+ )
      | ( tei_model.nameLike.agent+, tei
_resp+ )
    ),
    tei_note*
  )
}
```

## <revisionDesc>

**<revisionDesc>** (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. [[2.6. The Revision Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](#)]

### Module

header

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source

**Contained by**  
**May contain**

**Note**

**Example**

**Content model**

**Schema Declaration**

**<roleName>**

**<roleName>** (role name) contains a name component which indicates that the referent has a particular role or position in society, such as an official title or rank. [[14.2.1. Personal Names](#)]

- @source
- att.docStatus
- @status

header: teiHeader

core: list

header: change listChange

If present on this element, the *status* attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally <change> elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list.

```
<revisionDesc status="embargoed">  
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#  
LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>  
</revisionDesc>
```

```
<content>  
  <alternate>  
    <elementRef key="list"  
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs  
="1"/>  
    <elementRef key="listChange"  
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs  
="1"/>  
    <elementRef key="change"  
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs  
="1"/>  
  </alternate>  
</content>
```

```
element revisionDesc  
{  
  tei_att.global.attributes,  
  tei_att.docStatus.attributes,  
  ( tei_list+ | tei_listChange+ | tei_cha  
nge+ )  
}
```

## Module Attributes

## Member of Contained by

namesdates

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.personal
  - *@full*
  - *@sort*
- att.naming
  - *@role*
  - *@nymRef*
  - att.canonical
    - *@key*
    - *@ref*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

model.persNamePart

core: bibl date desc editor item name  
note p pubPlace publisher resp term  
title

header: catDesc change edition licence  
namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
eventName forename gender  
nameLink org placeName roleName

**May contain**

surname  
core: date name note ptr term title  
header: idno  
namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
eventName forename nameLink  
placeName roleName surname  
character data

**Note**

A <roleName> may be distinguished from an <addName> by virtue of the fact that, like a title, it typically exists independently of its holder.

**Example**

```
<persName>
  <forename>William</forename>
  <surname>Poulteny</surname>
  <roleName>Earl of Bath</
roleName>
</persName>
```

**Example**

```
<p>The <roleName role="solicitor_ge
neral">S.G.</roleName> is the only n
ational public official,
including the Supreme Court justices,
required by statute to be "learned in th
e law."</p>
```

**Example**

```
<p>
  <persName ref="#NJF">
    <roleName role="solicitor_general">
Solicitor General</roleName> Noel J.
Francisco</persName>,
representing the administration, asser
ted in rebuttal that there was nothing t
o disavow (...)
<persName ref="#NJF">Francisco</
persName> had violated the scrupulou
s standard of candor about the facts an
d
the law that <roleName role="solicito
r_general">S.G.s</roleName>, in Rep
ublican and Democratic administration
s
alike, have repeatedly said they must
honor.
</p>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element roleName
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.personal.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

## <settingDesc>

**<settingDesc>** (setting description) describes the setting or settings within which a language interaction takes place, or other places otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [[16.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile Description](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```
corpus
  • att.global
    • @xml:id
    • @n
    • @xml:lang
    • @xml:base
    • @xml:space
    • att.global.linking
      • @corresp
      • @synch
      • @sameAs
      • @copyOf
      • @next
      • @prev
      • @exclude
      • @select
    • att.global.rendition
      • @rend
      • @style
      • @rendition
    • att.global.responsibility
      • @cert
      • @resp
    • att.global.source
      • @source
  • att.declarable
    • @default
```

**Member of**  
**Contained by**  
**May contain**

### Note

```
model.profileDescPart
header: profileDesc
core: p
namesdates: listPlace place
May contain a prose description
```

organized as paragraphs, or a series of <setting> elements. If used to record not settings of language interactions, but other places mentioned in the text, then <place> optionally grouped by <listPlace> inside <standOff> should be preferred.

### Example

```
<settingDesc>
  <p>Texts recorded in the
    Canadian Parliament building in Otta
    wa, between April and November 1988
  </p>
```

### Schematron

```
</settingDesc>
<sch:pattern is-a="declarable">
  <sch:param name="tde"
    value="tei:settingDesc"/>
</sch:pattern>
```

### Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
      ="1"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="1">
      <elementRef key="setting"/>
      <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>
      <elementRef key="listPlace"/>
    </alternate>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

### Schema Declaration

```
element settingDesc
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.declarable.attributes,
  ( tei_model.pLike+ | ( setting | tei_mo
del.placeLike | tei_listPlace )+ )
}
```

### <sourceDesc>

**<sourceDesc>** (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as 'born digital' for a text which has no previous existence. [[2.2.7. The Source Description](#)]

### Module

header



## Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.declarable
  - *@default*

## Contained by May contain

## Example

header: fileDesc  
core: bibl list listBibl p  
namesdates: listEvent listOrg  
listPerson listPlace  
<sourceDesc>  
 <bibl>  
 <title level="a">The Interesting stor  
y of the Children in the Wood</title>. I  
n  
 <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>,  
 <title>The Penny Histories</title>.  
 <publisher>OUP</publisher>  
 <date>1968</date>. </bibl>  
</sourceDesc>  
<sourceDesc>  
 <p>Born digital: no previous source e  
xists.</p>  
</sourceDesc>  
<sch:pattern is-a="declarable">  
 <sch:param name="tde"  
value="tei:sourceDesc"/>  
</sch:pattern>

## Example

## Schematron

## Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
      ="1"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.sourceDescPa
      rt"/>
      <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
    </alternate>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element sourceDesc
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.declarable.attributes,
  (
    tei_model.pLike+
    | ( tei_model.biblLike | tei_model.sou
    rceDescPart | tei_model.listLike )+
  )
}
```

## <surname>

**<surname>** (surname) contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name. [[14.2.1. Personal Names](#)]

### Module

namesdates

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*

- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.personal
  - *@full*
  - *@sort*
- att.naming
  - *@role*
  - *@nymRef*
  - att.canonical
    - *@key*
    - *@ref*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

**Member of  
Contained by**

model.persNamePart  
 core: bibl date desc editor item name  
 note p pubPlace publisher resp term  
 title  
 header: catDesc change edition licence  
 namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
 eventName forename gender  
 nameLink org placeName roleName  
 surname

**May contain**

core: date name note ptr term title  
 header: idno  
 namesdates: affiliation bloc country  
 eventName forename nameLink  
 placeName roleName surname

**Example**

character data  
 <surname type="combine">St John St  
 evas</surname>

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element surname
{
```

```

    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.personal.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_macro.phraseSeq
  }

```

## <taxonomy>

**<taxonomy>** (taxonomy) defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy. [[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

### header

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.datcat
  - *@datcat*
  - *@valueDatcat*
  - *@targetDatcat*

**Contained by**  
**May contain**

### Note

header: classDecl taxonomy  
core: bibl desc listBibl  
header: category taxonomy  
Nested taxonomies are common in many fields, so the <taxonomy> element can be nested.

### Example

```
<taxonomy xml:id="tax.b">
```

```

<bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
<category xml:id="tax.b.a">
  <catDesc>Press Reportage</
catDesc>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a1">
    <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a2">
    <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a3">
    <catDesc>National</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a4">
    <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a5">
    <catDesc>Political</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a6">
    <catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.d">
  <catDesc>Religion</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.d1">
    <catDesc>Books</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.d2">
    <catDesc>Periodicals and tracts</
catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
</taxonomy>
<taxonomy>
  <category xml:id="literature">
    <catDesc>Literature</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="poetry">
      <catDesc>Poetry</catDesc>
      <category xml:id="sonnet">
        <catDesc>Sonnet</catDesc>
        <category xml:id="shakesSonnet">
          <catDesc>Shakespearean Sonnet</
catDesc>
        </category>
      </category>
      <category xml:id="petraSonnet">
        <catDesc>Petrarchan Sonnet</
catDesc>

```

## Example

```

    </category>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="haiku">
    <catDesc>Haiku</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
<category xml:id="drama">
  <catDesc>Drama</catDesc>
</category>
</category>
<category xml:id="meter">
  <catDesc>Metrical Categories</
catDesc>
  <category xml:id="feet">
    <catDesc>Metrical Feet</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="iambic">
      <catDesc>Iambic</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="trochaic">
      <catDesc>trochaic</catDesc>
    </category>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="feetNumber">
    <catDesc>Number of feet</
catDesc>
    <category xml:id="pentameter">
      <catDesc>>Pentameter</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tetrameter">
      <catDesc>>Tetrameter</catDesc>
    </category>
  </category>
</taxonomy>
<!-- elsewhere in document -->
<lg ana="#shakesSonnet #iambic #pe
ntameter">
  <l>Shall I compare thee to a summer'
s day</l>
<!-- ... -->
</lg>

```

## Content model

```

<content>
  <alternate>
    <alternate>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="1">
        <elementRef key="category"/>

```

```

        <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence>
        <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
"
            minOccurs="1">
                <classRef key="model.descLike"
                    maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
                <elementRef key="equiv" maxOccu
rs="1"
                    minOccurs="1"/>
                <elementRef key="gloss" maxOccu
rs="1"
                    minOccurs="1"/>
            </alternate>
        <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
"
            minOccurs="0">
                <elementRef key="category"/>
                <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>
            </alternate>
        </sequence>
    </alternate>
    <sequence>
        <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
        <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
            minOccurs="0">
                <elementRef key="category"/>
                <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>
            </alternate>
        </sequence>
    </alternate>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element taxonomy
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.datcat.attributes,
    (
        (
            ( tei_category | tei_taxonomy )+
            | (
                ( tei_model.descLike | equiv | gl
oss )+,
                ( tei_category | tei_taxonomy )*
            )
        )
    )
}

```

```

        | ( tei_model.biblLike, ( tei_category
| tei_taxonomy )* )
    )
}

```

## <teiHeader>

**<teiHeader>** (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources. [[2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](#) [16.1. Varieties of Composite Text](#)]

### Module

header

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

### Contained by

### May contain

### Note

textstructure: TEI  
 header: encodingDesc fileDesc  
 profileDesc revisionDesc  
 One of the few elements  
 unconditionally required in any TEI  
 document.

### Example

```

<teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
    <titleStmt>
      <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1
623) in electronic form</title>
      <author>Shakespeare, William (156
4-1616)</author>
    
```



```

    <respStmt>
      <resp>Originally prepared by</
resp>
      <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</
name>
    </respStmt>
    <respStmt>
      <resp>Revised and edited by</
resp>
      <name>Christine Avern-Carr</
name>
    </respStmt>
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
    <distributor>Oxford Text Archive</
distributor>
    <address>
      <addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxfor
d OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine>
    </address>
    <idno type="OTA">119</idno>
    <availability>
      <p>Freely available on a non-
commercial basis.</p>
    </availability>
    <date when="1968">1968</date>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare,
prepared by Charlton Hinman (The No
rton Facsimile,
    1968)</bibl>
  </sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
<encodingDesc>
<projectDesc>
  <p>Originally prepared for use in th
e production of a series of old-spelling
    concordances in 1968, this text wa
s extensively checked and revised for u
se during the
    editing of the new Oxford Shakesp
eare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</p>
</projectDesc>
<editorialDecl>
  <correction>
    <p>Turned letters are silently corre
cted.</p>

```

```

</correction>
<normalization>
  <p>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and ligatures are not encoded.</p>
</normalization>
</editorialDecl>
<refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF">
  <cRefPattern matchPattern="(S+) ([^.]*)\.(.*)"
    replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2/[@n='$2']/lb[@n='$3'])">
    <p>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that
      listed here: <list>
        <item>the <att>n</att> value of the preceding <gi>lb</gi>
        </item>
        <item>a period</item>
        <item>the <att>n</att> value of the ancestor <gi>div2</gi>
        </item>
        <item>a space</item>
        <item>the <att>n</att> value of the parent <gi>div1</gi>
        </item>
      </list>
    </p>
  </cRefPattern>
</refsDecl>
</encodingDesc>
<revisionDesc>
  <list>
    <item>
      <date when="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC</item>
    <item>
      <date when="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file</item>
    </list>
  </revisionDesc>
</teiHeader>

```

## Content model

```
<content>
```

```

<sequence>
  <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>
  <classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart"
"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
  <elementRef key="revisionDesc"
    minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element teiHeader
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  ( tei_fileDesc, tei_model.teiHeaderPa
rt*, tei_revisionDesc? )
}

```

## <term>

**<term>** (term) contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [[3.4.1. Terms and Glosses](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```

core
• att.global
  • @xml:id
  • @n
  • @xml:lang
  • @xml:base
  • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp
    • @synch
    • @sameAs
    • @copyOf
    • @next
    • @prev
    • @exclude
    • @select
  • att.global.rendition
    • @rend
    • @style
    • @rendition
  • att.global.responsibility
    • @cert
    • @resp
  • att.global.source
    • @source

```

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.cReferencing <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@cRef</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@key</i></li> <li>• <i>@ref</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@generatedBy</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.declaring <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@decls</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.pointing <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@targetLang</i></li> <li>• <i>@target</i></li> <li>• <i>@evaluate</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@sortKey</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@type</i></li> <li>• <i>@subtype</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	model.emphLike
<b>Contained by</b>	core: bibl date desc editor item name note p pubPlace publisher resp term title header: catDesc change edition licence namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename gender nameLink placeName roleName surname
<b>May contain</b>	core: date name note ptr term title header: idno namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename nameLink placeName roleName surname character data
<b>Note</b>	<p>When this element appears within an &lt;index&gt; element, it is understood to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for that location. Elsewhere, it is understood simply to indicate that its content is to be regarded as a technical or specialised term. It may be associated with a &lt;gloss&gt; element by means of its <i>ref</i> attribute; alternatively a &lt;gloss&gt; element may point to a &lt;term&gt; element by means of its <i>target</i> attribute.</p> <p>In formal terminological work, there is</p>

frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The <term> element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the <term> element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion.

As with other members of the att.canonical class, instances of this element occurring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the *ref* attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the *key* attribute). Because the mutually exclusive *target* and *cRef* attributes overlap with the function of the *ref* attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release.

### Example

A computational device that infers structure

from grammatical strings of words is known as a <term>parser</term>, and much of the history

of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.

### Example

We may define <term rend="sc" xml:id="TDPV1">discoursal point of view</term> as

<gloss target="#TDPV1">the relationship, expressed

through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the

fiction.</gloss>

### Example

We may define <term ref="#TDPV2" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> as

<gloss xml:id="TDPV2">the relationship, expressed

through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the

## Example

```
fiction.</gloss>
We discuss Leech's concept of <term r
ef="myGlossary.xml#TDPV2" rend="sc
">discoursal point of view</term> bel
ow.
```

## Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element term
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cReferencing.attributes,
  tei_att.canonical.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.declaring.attributes,
  tei_att.pointing.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

## <text>

**<text>** (text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [[4. Default Text Structure 16.1. Varieties of Composite Text](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```
textstructure
• att.global
  • @xml:id
  • @n
  • @xml:lang
  • @xml:base
  • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp
    • @synch
    • @sameAs
    • @copyOf
    • @next
    • @prev
    • @exclude
    • @select
  • att.global.rendition
    • @rend
    • @style
```

**Member of  
Contained by  
May contain**

**Note**

**Example**

**Example**

- *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.declaring
  - *@decls*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

model.resource

textstructure: TEI

core: note

textstructure: body

This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose.

```
<text>
<front>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
</front>
<body>
  <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l>
  <l>That settles softly down upon the
water?</l>
</body>
</text>
```

The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:

```
<text>
<front>
<!-- front matter for the whole group --
>
</front>
<group>
  <text>
```

## Content model

```
<!-- first text -->
</text>
<text>
<!-- second text -->
</text>
</group>
</text>

<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
      ="0"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <elementRef key="front"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
        s="0"/>
    </sequence>
    <alternate>
      <elementRef key="body"/>
      <elementRef key="group"/>
    </alternate>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
      ="0"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <elementRef key="back"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
        s="0"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element text
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.declaring.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  tei_att.written.attributes,
  (
    tei_model.global*,
    ( ( front, tei_model.global* )? ),
    ( tei_body | group ),
    tei_model.global*,
    ( ( back, tei_model.global* )? )
  )
}
```



```
)
}
```

## <title>

**<title>** (title) contains a title for any kind of work. [[3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](#) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](#) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](#)]

### Module

core

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.canonical
  - *@key*
  - *@ref*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*
    - *@to-custom*
    - *@datingPoint*
    - *@datingMethod*
  - att.datable.iso

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@when-iso</i></li> <li>• <i>@notBefore-iso</i></li> <li>• <i>@notAfter-iso</i></li> <li>• <i>@from-iso</i></li> <li>• <i>@to-iso</i></li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.datable.w3c <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@when</i></li> <li>• <i>@notBefore</i></li> <li>• <i>@notAfter</i></li> <li>• <i>@from</i></li> <li>• <i>@to</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• type</li> <li>• @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
type	<p>classifies the title according to some convenient typology.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> att.typed</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> teidata.enumerated</p> <p><b>Sample values include:</b> <b>main</b> main title  <b>sub</b> (subordinate) subtitle, title of part  <b>alt</b> (alternative) alternate title, often in another</p>

language  
, by  
which  
the  
work  
is  
also  
known

**short**  
abbreviated  
form  
of  
title

**desc**  
(descriptive)  
descriptive  
phrase  
of  
the  
work  
functioning  
as  
a  
title

**Note** This  
attribute  
is  
provided  
for  
convenience  
in  
analysing  
titles and  
processing  
them  
according  
to their

type;  
 where  
 such  
 specialize  
 d  
 processin  
 g is not  
 necessary  
 , there is  
 no need  
 for such  
 analysis,  
 and the  
 entire  
 title,  
 including  
 subtitles  
 and any  
 parallel  
 titles,  
 may be  
 enclosed  
 within a  
 single  
 <title>  
 element.

level

indicates the  
 bibliographic level  
 for a title, that is,  
 whether it  
 identifies an  
 article, book,  
 journal, series, or  
 unpublished  
 material.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.e  
 numerate  
 d

**Legal** a  
**values** (anal  
**are:** ytic)  
 the  
 title  
 appli  
 es to  
 an

analytic item, such as an article, poem, or other work published as part of a larger item.

**m**

(monographic) the title applies to a monograph such as a book or other item considered to be a distinct publi

catio  
n,  
inclu  
ding  
singl  
e  
volu  
mes  
of  
multi  
-  
volu  
me  
work  
s

**j**

(jour  
nal)  
the  
title  
appli  
es to  
any  
seria  
l or  
perio  
dical  
publi  
catio  
n  
such  
as a  
jour  
nal,  
mag  
azin  
e, or  
news  
pape  
r

**s**

(seri  
es)  
the  
title  
appli  
es to

a  
serie  
s of  
othe  
rwis  
e  
disti  
nct  
publi  
catio  
ns  
such  
as a  
colle  
ction

**u**

(unp  
ublis  
hed)  
the  
title  
appli  
es to  
any  
unpu  
blish  
ed  
mate  
rial  
(incl  
udin  
g  
thes  
es  
and  
disse  
rtati  
ons  
unle  
ss  
publi  
shed  
by a  
com  
merc  
ial  
pres  
s)

**Note** The level of a title is sometime s implied by its context: for example, a title appearin g directly within an <analytic> element is *ipso facto* of level 'a', and one appearin g within a <series> element of level 's'. For this reason, the *level* attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambig uously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should



	not contradict the value implied by its parent element.
<b>Member of Contained by</b>	model.emphLike core: bibl date desc editor item name note p pubPlace publisher resp term title header: catDesc change edition licence titleStmt namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename gender nameLink placeName roleName surname
<b>May contain</b>	core: bibl date desc list listBibl name note ptr term title header: idno namesdates: affiliation bloc country eventName forename listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink placeName roleName surname character data
<b>Note</b>	The attributes <i>key</i> and <i>ref</i> , inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.
<b>Example</b>	<title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of a conference held at Cranfield Institut e of Technology, UK, 18-21 July 1989</title>
<b>Example</b>	<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urberville s: a machine readable edition</title>
<b>Example</b>	<title type="full"> <title type="main">Synthèse</title> <title type="sub">an international jo urnal for

```

    epistemology, methodology and histo
ry of
    science</title>
</title>

```

## Content model

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/
>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element title
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.canonical.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.datable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { text }?,
  attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "
u" }?,
  tei_macro.paraContent
}

```

## <titleStmt>

**<titleStmt>** (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [[2.2.1. The Title Statement](#) [2.2. The File Description](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```

header
• att.global
  • @xml:id
  • @n
  • @xml:lang
  • @xml:base
  • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp
    • @synch
    • @sameAs
    • @copyOf
    • @next
    • @prev
    • @exclude
    • @select
  • att.global.rendition
    • @rend
    • @style

```

- *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

**Contained by**  
**May contain**  
**Example**

```
header: fileDesc
core: editor respStmt title
<titleStmt>
  <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable transcription
</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>compiled by</resp>
    <name>P.J. Lucas</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="title"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
    <classRef key="model.respLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element titleStmt
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  ( tei_title+, tei_model.respLike* )
}
```

## ***Model classes***

### **model.addressLike**

**model.addressLike** groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [[1. The TEI Infrastructure](#)]

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

model.pPart.data

**Members**

*affiliation*

## model.attributable

**model.attributable** groups elements that contain a word or phrase that can be attributed to a source. [[3.3.3. Quotation](#) [4.3.2. Floating Texts](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	macro.phraseSeq model.inter
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.quoteLike</i>

## model.availabilityPart

**model.availabilityPart** groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	availability
<b>Members</b>	<i>licence</i>

## model.biblLike

**model.biblLike** groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [[3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	event listBibl model.inter model.personPart org place sourceDesc taxonomy
<b>Members</b>	<i>bibl listBibl</i>

## model.biblPart

**model.biblPart** groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [[3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	bibl
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.imprintPart[pubPlace publisher]</i> <i>model.respLike[editor respStmt]</i> <i>availability bibl edition</i>

## model.common

**model.common** groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	body
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.cmc model.divPart[model.lLike model.pLike[p]] model.inter[model.attributable[model. quoteLike] model.biblLike[bibl listBibl] model.egLike model.labelLike[desc] model.listLike[list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace] model.oddDecl</i>

## Note

*model.stageLike]*

This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

## model.dateLike

**model.dateLike** groups elements containing temporal expressions. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](#) [14.4. Dates](#)]

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

model.pPart.data

**Members**

*date*

## model.descLike

**model.descLike** groups elements which contain a description of their function.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

category taxonomy

**Members**

*desc*

## model.divBottom

**model.divBottom** groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](#)]

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

body list

**Members**

*model.divBottomPart*

*model.divWrapper*

## model.divPart

**model.divPart** groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

macro.specialPara model.common

**Members**

*model.lLike model.pLike[p]*

**Note**

Note that this element class does not include members of the model.inter class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

## model.divTop

**model.divTop** groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](#)]

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

body list

<b>Members</b>	<i>model.divTopPart[model.headLike] model.divWrapper</i>
----------------	--

## model.divTopPart

**model.divTopPart** groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [[4.6. Title Pages](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	model.divTop
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.headLike</i>

## model.emphLike

**model.emphLike** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase
<b>Members</b>	<i>term title</i>

## model.encodingDescPart

**model.encodingDescPart** groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	encodingDesc
<b>Members</b>	<i>classDecl</i>

## model.eventLike

**model.eventLike** groups elements which describe events.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	event listEvent model.orgPart model.personPart place
<b>Members</b>	<i>event listEvent</i>

## model.global

**model.global** groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	bibl body date list macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara model.paraPart person text
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.global.edit model.global.meta model.milestoneLike model.noteLike[note]</i>

## model.highlighted

**model.highlighted** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	bibl model.phrase
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.emphLike[term title]</i> <i>model.hiLike</i>

## model.imprintPart

**model.imprintPart** groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [[3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	model.biblPart
<b>Members</b>	<i>pubPlace publisher</i>

## model.inter

**model.inter** groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	macro.limitedContent macro.specialPara model.common model.paraPart
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.attributable[model.quoteLike]</i> <i>model.biblLike[bibl listBibl]</i> <i>model.egLike model.labelLike[desc]</i> <i>model.listLike[list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace] model.oddDecl</i> <i>model.stageLike</i>

## model.labelLike

**model.labelLike** groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	event model.inter org place
<b>Members</b>	<i>desc</i>

## model.limitedPhrase

**model.limitedPhrase** groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	catDesc macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.emphLike[term title]</i> <i>model.hiLike</i>

*model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[affiliation] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[bloc country placeName]] eventName idno] model.pPart.editorial model.pPart.msdesc [model.phrase.xml](#) model.ptrLike[ptr]*

## model.listLike

**model.listLike** groups list-like elements. [[3.8. Lists](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	model.inter sourceDesc
<b>Members</b>	<i>list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace</i>

## model.nameLike

**model.nameLike** groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	model.pPart.data org
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[bloc country placeName]] eventName idno</i>

<b>Note</b>	A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.
-------------	---

## model.nameLike.agent

**model.nameLike.agent** groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [[3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	model.nameLike respStmt
<b>Members</b>	<i>name</i>
<b>Note</b>	This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of



people or organizations.

## **model.noteLike**

**model.noteLike** groups globally-available note-like elements. [[3.9. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	event model.global org place
<b>Members</b>	<i>note</i>

## **model.orgPart**

**model.orgPart** groups elements which form part of the description of an organization.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	org
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.eventLike[event listEvent] listOrg listPerson listPlace</i>

## **model.pLike**

**model.pLike** groups paragraph-like elements.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	availability editionStmt encodingDesc event model.divPart org particDesc person place publicationStmt settingDesc sourceDesc
<b>Members</b>	<i>p</i>

## **model.pPart.data**

**model.pPart.data** groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [[3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.addressLike[affiliation] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[bloc country placeName]] eventName idno]</i>

## **model.pPart.edit**

**model.pPart.edit** groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial

correction and transcription. [[3.5. Simple Editorial Changes](#)]

<b>Module</b>	<i>tei</i>
<b>Used by</b>	<i>bibl model.phrase</i>
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.pPart.editorial model.pPart.transcriptional</i>

## **model.paraPart**

**model.paraPart** groups elements that may appear in paragraphs and similar elements. [[3.1. Paragraphs](#)]

<b>Module</b>	<i>tei</i>
<b>Used by</b>	<i>macro.paraContent</i>
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.gLike model.global[model.global.edit model.global.meta model.milestoneLike model.noteLike[note]] model.inter[model.attributable[model. quoteLike] model.biblLike[bibl listBibl] model.egLike model.labelLike[desc] model.listLike[list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace] model.oddDecl model.stageLike] model.lLike model.phrase[model.graphicLike model.highlighted[model.emphLike[ter m title] model.hiLike] model.lPart model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[a ffiliation] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agen t[name] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNam ePart[bloc country placeName]] eventName idno]] model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial model.pPart.transcriptional] model.pPart.msdesc <a href="#">model.phrase.xml</a> model.ptrLike[ptr] model.segLike model.specDescLike]</i>

## **model.persNamePart**

**model.persNamePart** groups elements which form part of a personal name. [[14.2.1. Personal Names](#)]

<b>Module</b>	<i>namesdates</i>
<b>Used by</b>	<i>model.nameLike</i>
<b>Members</b>	<i>forename nameLink roleName</i>

*surname*

## **model.persStateLike**

**model.persStateLike** groups elements describing changeable characteristics of a person which have a definite duration, for example occupation, residence, or name.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

model.personPart

**Members**

*affiliation gender*

**Note**

These characteristics of an individual are typically a consequence of their own action or that of others.

## **model.personLike**

**model.personLike** groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

event listPerson org particDesc

**Members**

*org person*

## **model.personPart**

**model.personPart** groups elements which form part of the description of a person. [[16.2.2. The Participant Description](#)]

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

person

**Members**

*model.biblLike[bibl listBibl]  
model.eventLike[event listEvent]  
model.persStateLike[affiliation  
gender] idno name*

## **model.phrase**

**model.phrase** groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

date macro.phraseSeq  
macro.specialPara model.paraPart

**Members**

*model.graphicLike  
model.highlighted[model.emphLike[term title] model.hiLike] model.lPart  
model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[affiliation] model.dateLike[date]  
model.measureLike  
model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike  
model.persNamePart[forename]*

*nameLink roleName surname]*  
*model.placeStateLike[model.placeNam*  
*ePart[bloc country placeName]]*  
*eventName idno]]*  
*model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial*  
*model.pPart.transcriptional]*  
*model.pPart.msdesc [model.phrase.xml](#)*  
*model.ptrLike[ptr] model.segLike*  
*model.specDescLike*

## Note

This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

## model.placeLike

**model.placeLike** groups elements used to provide information about places and their relationships.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	event listPlace org place settingDesc
<b>Members</b>	<i>place</i>

## model.placeNamePart

**model.placeNamePart** groups elements which form part of a place name. [[14.2.3. Place Names](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	model.placeStateLike
<b>Members</b>	<i>bloc country placeName</i>

## model.placeStateLike

**model.placeStateLike** groups elements which describe changing states of a place.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	model.nameLike place
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.placeNamePart[bloc country placeName]</i>

## model.profileDescPart

**model.profileDescPart** groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	profileDesc
<b>Members</b>	<i>particDesc settingDesc</i>

## model.ptrLike

**model.ptrLike** groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [[3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	bibl event model.limitedPhrase model.phrase model.publicationStmtPart.detail org person place <i>ptr</i>
<b>Members</b>	

## **model.publicationStmtPart.agency**

**model.publicationStmtPart.agency** groups the child elements of a <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	publicationStmt
<b>Members</b>	<i>publisher</i>
<b>Note</b>	The ‘agency’ child elements, while not required, are required if one of the ‘detail’ child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a ‘detail’ child element without a preceding ‘agency’ child element.  See also model.publicationStmtPart.detail.

## **model.publicationStmtPart.detail**

**model.publicationStmtPart.detail** groups the agency-specific child elements of the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	publicationStmt
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.ptrLike[ptr] availability date idno pubPlace</i>
<b>Note</b>	A ‘detail’ child element may not occur unless an ‘agency’ child element precedes it.  See also model.publicationStmtPart.agency.

## **model.resource**

**model.resource** groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	TEI
<b>Members</b>	<i>text</i>

## model.respLike

**model.respLike** groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	editionStmt model.biblPart titleStmt
<b>Members</b>	<i>editor respStmt</i>

## model.teiHeaderPart

**model.teiHeaderPart** groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	teiHeader
<b>Members</b>	<i>encodingDesc profileDesc</i>

## Attribute classes

### att.anchoring

**att.anchoring** (anchoring) provides attributes for use on annotations, e.g. notes and groups of notes describing the existence and position of an anchor for annotations.

<b>Module</b>	tei	
<b>Members</b>	<i>note</i>	
<b>Attributes</b>	anchored	(anchored) indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> teidata.truthValue <b>Default</b> true <b>Note</b> In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An

explicit  
indicatio  
n of the  
phrase or  
line  
annotate  
d may  
however  
be used  
instead  
(e.g.  
'page  
218, lines  
3-4'). The  
*anchored*  
attribute  
indicates  
whether  
any  
explicit  
location  
is given,  
whether  
by  
symbol or  
by prose  
cross-  
reference  
. The  
value  
*true*  
indicates  
that such  
an  
explicit  
location  
is  
indicated  
in the  
copy text;  
the value  
*false*  
indicates  
that the  
copy text  
does not  
indicate a  
specific

	place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the <i>n</i> attribute.
targetEnd	(target end) points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace <b>Note</b> This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be removed



at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the range function of XPointer, as further described in [17.2.4.6. range\(\)](#).

### Example

```
<p>(...) tamen reuerendos dominos archiepiscopum et canonicos Leopolienses  
necnon episcopum in duplicibus Quatuor temporibus<anchor xml:id="A55234  
"/> totaliter expeditui...</p>  
<!-- elsewhere in the document -->  
<noteGrp targetEnd="#A55234">  
  <note xml:lang="en"> Quatuor Tempora, so called dry fast days.  
  </note>  
  <note xml:lang="pl"> Quatuor Tempora, tzw. Suche dni postne.  
  </note>  
</noteGrp>
```

### att.ascribed

**att.ascribed** provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [[3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts](#)]

#### Module

tei

## Members Attributes

*change*  
*who*

indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞

occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <role> elements in the <castList> using the *who* attribute. <castItem type="role">

<role xml:id="Bernardo">Bernardo</role>

</castItem>

<castItem type="role">

<role xml:id="Francisco">Francisco</role>

<roleDesc>a soldier</roleDesc>

</castItem>

<!-- ... -->

<sp who="#Bernardo">

<speaker>Bernardo</speaker>

<ln="1">Who's there?</ln>

</sp>

```

<sp who="#Francisco">
  <speaker>Francisco</speaker>
  <l n="2">Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.</l>
</sp>

```

**Note** For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element.

## att.cReferencing

**att.cReferencing** provides attributes that may be used to supply a *canonical reference* as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.

**Module**

tei

**Members**

*ptr term*

**Attributes**

cRef

(canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a <refsDecl> element in the TEI header.

<b>Status</b>	Optional
<b>Datatype</b>	teidata.text
<b>Note</b>	<p>The value of <i>cRef</i> should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section <a href="#">17.2.5. Canonical References</a>) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended target.</p> <p>The <code>&lt;refsDecl&gt;</code> to use may be indicated with the <i>decls</i> attribute.</p> <p>Currently these Guidelines only provide for a</p>

single  
canonical  
reference  
to be  
encoded  
on any  
given  
<ptr>  
element.

## att.calendarSystem

**att.calendarSystem** provides attributes for indicating calendar systems to which a date belongs. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](#) [14.4. Dates](#)]

**Module** *tei*  
**Members** *date*  
**Attributes** *calendar*

indicates one or more systems or calendars to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** 1-∞

occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

**Schematron** <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@calendar]">  
 <sch:assert test="string-length(normalize-space(.)) gt 0">  
 @calendar indicates

one or  
more  
systems  
or  
calendars  
to which  
the date  
represent  
ed by the  
content  
of this  
element  
belongs,  
but this  
<sch:na  
me/>  
element  
has no  
textual  
content.<  
/sch:asse  
rt>  
</sch:rul  
e>

He was born on <d  
ate calendar="#gr  
egorian">Feb. 22,  
1732</date> (<dat  
e calendar="#julia  
n"  
when="1732-02-  
22">Feb. 11, 1731/  
32,  
O.S.</date>).

He was born on <  
date calendar="#g  
regorian #julian"  
when="1732-02-  
22">Feb. 22, 1732  
(Feb. 11, 1731/32,  
O.S.)</date>.

**Note** Note that  
the  
*calendar*  
attribute  
declares

the  
calendar  
system  
used to  
interpret  
the  
textual  
content  
of an  
element,  
as it  
appears  
on an  
original  
source. It  
does *not*  
modify  
the  
interpret  
ation of  
the  
normaliz  
ation  
attributes  
provided  
by  
att.databl  
e.w3c,  
att.databl  
e.iso, or  
att.databl  
e.custom.  
Attribute  
s from  
those  
first two  
classes  
are  
always  
interpret  
ed as  
Gregoria  
n or  
proleptic  
Gregoria  
n dates,  
as per  
the

respective standards on which they are based. The calendar system used to interpret the last (att.datable.custom) may be specified with *datingMethod*.

## att.canonical

**att.canonical** provides attributes that can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. [[14.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents](#)]

### Module

### Members

tei

*att.naming[att.personal[eventName forename name placeName roleName surname] affiliation bloc country editor event pubPlace] bibl catDesc date publisher resp respStmt term title*

### Attributes

key

provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.text

<author>

<name key="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)" ref="http://



```

www.idref.fr/
026927608">Victo
r Hugo</name>
</author>

```

**Note** The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent. No particular syntax is proposed for the values of the *key* attribute, since its form will depend entirely on practice within a given project.

ref

(reference)  
provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** 1-∞  
occurren

ces  
of teidata  
.pointer  
separate  
d by  
whitespa  
ce  
<name ref="http://  
viaf.org/viaf/  
109557338"  
type="person">Se  
amus Heaney</  
name>

**Note** The value  
must  
point  
directly  
to one or  
more  
XML  
elements  
or other  
resources  
by means  
of one or  
more  
URIs,  
separate  
d by  
whitespa  
ce. If  
more  
than one  
is  
supplied  
the  
implicati  
on is that  
the name  
identifies  
several  
distinct  
entities.

## Example

In this contrived example, a canonical  
reference to the same organisation is  
provided in four different ways.

<author n="1">

```

<name ref="http://
nzetc.victoria.ac.nz/tm/scholarly/name-
427308.html"
  type="organisation">New Zealand Pa
liament, Legislative Council</name>
</author>

```

```

<author n="2">
  <name ref="nzvn:427308"
    type="organisation">New Zealand Pa
liament, Legislative Council</name>
</author>

```

```

<author n="3">
  <name ref="./
named_entities.xml#o427308"
    type="organisation">New Zealand Pa
liament, Legislative Council</name>
</author>

```

```

<author n="4">
  <name key="name-427308"
    type="organisation">New Zealand Pa
liament, Legislative Council</name>
</author>

```

The first presumes the availability of an internet connection and a processor that can resolve a URI (most can). The second requires, in addition, a `<prefixDef>` that declares how the `nzvm` prefix should be interpreted. The third does not require an internet connection, but does require that a file named `named_entities.xml` be in the same directory as the TEI document. The fourth requires that an entire external system for key resolution be available.

## Note

The *key* attribute is more flexible and general-purpose, but its use in interchange requires that documentation about how the key is to be resolved be sent to the recipient of the TEI document. In contrast values of the *ref* attribute are resolved using the widely accepted protocols for a URI, and thus less documentation, if

any, is likely required by the recipient in data interchange.

These guidelines provide no semantic basis or suggested precedence when both *key* and *ref* are provided. For this reason simultaneous use of both is not recommended unless documentation explaining the use is provided, probably in an ODD customization, for interchange.

## att.cmc

**att.cmc** (computer-mediated communication) provides attributes categorizing how the element content was created in a CMC environment.

### Module

tei

### Members

*affiliation bibl bloc country date desc  
forename idno list listBibl listEvent  
listOrg listPerson listPlace name  
nameLink note p placeName ptr  
roleName surname term title*

### Attributes

generatedBy

(generated by)  
categorizes how  
the content of an  
element was  
generated in a  
CMC environment.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.e  
numerate  
d

**Schematron** <sch:rule  
context=  
"tei:\*[@g  
enerated  
By]">  
<sch:ass  
ert test="  
ancestor-  
or-  
self::tei:p  
ost">The  
@generat  
edBy  
attribute  
is for use  
within a

<post>  
element.  
</sch:ass  
ert>  
</sch:rul  
e>

**Suggest human**  
**ed** the  
**values** cont  
**include:** ent  
was  
'natu  
rally'  
type  
d or  
spok  
en  
by a  
hum  
an  
user  
**template**  
the  
cont  
ent  
was  
gene  
rate  
d  
after  
a  
hum  
an  
user  
activ  
ated  
a  
temp  
late  
for  
its  
inser  
tion  
**system**  
the  
cont  
ent

was  
gene  
rate  
d by  
the  
syste  
m,  
i.e.  
the  
CMC  
envir  
onm  
ent

**bot**

the  
cont  
ent  
was  
gene  
rate  
d by  
a  
bot,  
i.e. a  
non-  
hum  
an  
agen  
t,  
typic  
ally  
one  
that  
is  
not  
part  
of  
the  
CMC  
envir  
onm  
ent  
itself

**unspeci  
fied**

the  
cont

ent  
was  
gene  
rate  
d by  
an  
unkn  
own  
or  
unsp  
ecifi  
ed  
proc  
ess

automatic system  
message in chat:  
user moves on to  
another chatroom  
<post generatedBy  
="system"  
rend="color:blue"  
type="event"  
who="#system">  
<p>  
    <name corresp="A02"  
        type="nickname"  
    >McMike</name>  
geht  
    in einen anderen  
Raum: <name type  
="roomname">Kre  
uzfahrt</name>  
</p>  
</post>  
automatic system  
message in chat:  
user enters a  
chatroom  
<post generatedBy  
="system"  
type="event">  
<p>  
    <name corresp="A08"  
        type="nickname"  
    >c\_bo</name> bet  
ritt

```

    den Raum. </p>
</post>
automatic system
message in chat:
user changes his
font color
<post generatedBy
="system"
rend="color:red"
type="event">
<p>
    <name corresp="
#A08"
    type="nickname"
>c_bo</name> hat
die
    Farbe gewechselt
.
</p>
</post>
An automatic
signature of user
including an
automatic
timestamp
(Wikipedia
discussion,
anonymized). The
specification of
generatedBy at the
inner element
<signed> is meant
to override the
specification at the
outer element
<post>. This is
generally possible
when the outer
generatedBy value
is "human".
<post generatedBy
="human"
indentLevel="2"
synch="#t003944
07"
type="standard"
who="#WU00005
582">

```



```

<p> Kurze Nachfr
age: Die Hieros für
den Goldnamen sta
mmen
    auch von Beckera
th gem. Literatur ?
Grüße --</p>
<signed generated
By="template"
rend="inline">
    <gap reason="sig
natureContent"/>
    <time generatedB
y="template">18:5
0, 22. Okt. 2008 (C
EST)</time>
</signed>
</post>
Wikipedia talk
page: user
signature
<post generatedBy
="human"
type="written">
<!-- ... main conten
t of posting ... -->
    <signed generated
By="template">
    <gap reason="sig
natureContent"/>
    <time generatedB
y="template">12:0
1, 12. Jun. 2009 (C
EST)</time>
</signed>
</post>

```

## att.datable

**att.datable** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](#) [14.4. Dates](#)]

### Module

tei

### Members

*affiliation bloc change country date  
editor event eventName gender idno  
licence name placeName resp title*

### Attributes

- att.datable.custom
  - @when-custom
  - @notBefore-custom

- *@notAfter-custom*
- *@from-custom*
- *@to-custom*
- *@datingPoint*
- *@datingMethod*
- att.dataable.iso
  - *@when-iso*
  - *@notBefore-iso*
  - *@notAfter-iso*
  - *@from-iso*
  - *@to-iso*
- att.dataable.w3c
  - *@when*
  - *@notBefore*
  - *@notAfter*
  - *@from*
  - *@to*

period supplies pointers to one or more definitions of named periods of time (typically <category>s, <date>s, or <event>s) within which the dataable item is understood to have occurred.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** 1-∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

## Note

This 'superclass' provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the att.dataable.w3c class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the att.dataable.iso and att.dataable.custom classes. In general, the possible values of attributes

restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

## att.dataable.custom

**att.dataable.custom** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dataable events to a custom dating system (i.e. other than the Gregorian used by W3 and ISO). [[14.4. Dates](#)]

### Module

namesdates

### Members

*att.dataable[affiliation bloc change country date editor event eventName gender idno licence name placeName resp title]*

### Attributes

when-custom

supplies the value of a date or time in some custom standard form.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞

occurrences of teidata .word separated by whitespace

The following are examples of custom date or time formats that are *not* valid ISO or W3C format normalizations, normalized to a different dating system

<p>Alhazen died in Cairo on the  
<date when="1040-03-06"  
when-custom="431-06-

12"> 12th day of Ju  
mada t-Tania, 430  
AH

</date>.</p>

<p>The current w  
orld will end at the  
<date when="2012  
-12-21"

when-  
custom="13.0.0.0.  
0">end of B'ak'tun  
13</date>.</p>

<p>The Battle of  
Meggidu

(<date when-  
custom="Thutmose  
\_III:23">23rd year  
of reign of Thutmos  
e III</date>).</p>

<p>Esidorus bixit i  
n pace annos LXX p  
lus minus sub

<date when-  
custom="Ind:4-10-  
11">die XI mensis  
Octobris indictione  
IIII</date>

</p>

Not all custom date  
formulations will  
have Gregorian  
equivalents.The

*when-custom*  
attribute and other  
custom dating are  
not constrained to  
a datatype by the  
TEI, but individual  
projects are  
recommended to  
regularize and  
document their  
dating formats.

notBefore-custom specifies the  
earliest possible  
date for the event  
in some custom  
standard form.

	<b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata .word separated by whitespace
notAfter-custom	specifies the latest possible date for the event in some custom standard form. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata .word separated by whitespace
from-custom	indicates the starting point of the period in some custom standard form. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata .word separated by whitespace
	<event datingMethod="#julian" from-custom="1666-09-02" to-custom="1666-09-05"

	<pre> xml:id="FIRE1"&gt;   &lt;head&gt;The Great Fire of London&lt;/ head&gt;   &lt;p&gt;The Great Fir e of London burned through a large par t     of the city of Lon don.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/event&gt; </pre>
to-custom	<p>indicates the ending point of the period in some custom standard form.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace</p>
datingPoint	<p>supplies a pointer to some location defining a named point in time with reference to which the datable item is understood to have occurred.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> teidata.pointer</p>
datingMethod	<p>supplies a pointer to a &lt;calendar&gt; element or other means of interpreting the values of the custom dating attributes.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> teidata.p</p>

ointer  
 Contayning the Ori  
 ginall, Antiquity, In  
 creafe, Moderne  
 eftate, and defcrip  
 tion of that Citie, w  
 ritten in the yeare  
 <date calendar="#  
 julian"  
 datingMethod="#j  
 ulian"  
 when-  
 custom="1598">1  
 598</date>. by Ioh  
 n Stow  
 Citizen of London.  
 In this example,  
 the *calendar*  
 attribute points to  
 a <calendar>  
 element for the  
 Julian calendar,  
 specifying that the  
 text content of the  
 <date> element is  
 a Julian date, and  
 the *datingMethod*  
 attribute also  
 points to the Julian  
 calendar to  
 indicate that the  
 content of the  
*when-custom*  
 attribute value is  
 Julian too.  
 <date datingMetho  
 d="#creationOfWo  
 rld"  
 when="1382-06-  
 28"  
 when-  
 custom="6890-06-  
 20"> μηνὶ Ἰουνίου  
 εἰς <num>κ</  
 num> ἔτους <num  
 >ζωῆ</num>  
 </date>  
 In this example, a

date is given in a Mediaeval text measured 'from the creation of the world', which is normalized (in *when*) to the Gregorian date, but is also normalized (in *when-custom*) to a machine-actionable, numeric version of the date from the Creation.

**Note** Note that the *datingMethod* attribute (unlike *calendar* defined in att.databl e) defines the calendar or dating system to which the date described by the parent element is normalized (i.e. in the *when-custom* or other *X-custom* attributes), *not* the calendar of the



original  
date in  
the  
element.

## att.dateable.iso

**att.dateable.iso** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dateable events using the ISO 8601:2004 standard. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](#)  
[14.4. Dates](#)]

### Module

### Members

namesdates

*att.dateable[affiliation bloc change  
country date editor event eventName  
gender idno licence name placeName  
resp title]*

### Attributes

when-iso

supplies the value  
of a date or time in  
a standard form.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.te  
mporal.iso  
o

The following are  
examples of ISO  
date, time, and  
date & time  
formats that are  
*not* valid W3C  
format  
normalizations.  
<date when-  
iso="1996-09-  
24T07:25+00">Se  
pt. 24th, 1996 at 3:  
25 in the morning<  
/date>  
<date when-  
iso="1996-09-  
24T03:25-  
04">Sept. 24th, 19  
96 at 3:25 in the m  
orning</date>  
<time when-  
iso="1999-01-  
04T20:42-05">4 Ja  
n 1999 at 8:42 pm  
</time>  
<time when-

iso="1999-W01-1T20,70-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time>  
 <date when-iso="2006-05-18T10:03">a few minutes after ten i  
 n the morning on T hu 18 May</date>  
 <time when-iso="03:00">3 A.M.</time>  
 <time when-iso="14">around t wo</time>  
 <time when-iso="15,5">half pa st three</time>  
 All of the examples of the *when* attribute in the att.dataable.w3c class are also valid with respect to this attribute.  
 He likes to be punctual. I said <q>  
 <time when-iso="12">around noon</time>  
 </q>, and he showed up at <time when-iso="12:00:00">12 O'clock</time> on the dot.  
 The second occurrence of <time> could have been encoded with the *when* attribute, as 12:00:00 is a valid time with respect to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition

	specification. The first occurrence could not.
notBefore-iso	specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> teidata.temporal.iso
notAfter-iso	specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> teidata.temporal.iso
from-iso	indicates the starting point of the period in standard form. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> teidata.temporal.iso
to-iso	indicates the ending point of the period in standard form. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> teidata.temporal.iso

## Note

The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by ISO 8601:2004, using the Gregorian calendar.

If both *when-iso* and *dur-iso* are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and

duration. That is,

```
<date dur-iso="P8D" when-iso="2007-06-01"/>
```

indicates the same time period as

```
<date when-iso="2007-06-01/P8D"/>
```

In providing a 'regularized' form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.

## att.dateable.w3c

**att.dateable.w3c** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dateable events conforming to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](#) [14.4. Dates](#)]

### Module

tei

### Members

*att.dateable[affiliation bloc change country date editor event eventName gender idno licence name placeName resp title]*

### Attributes

when

supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** tei:dateable.w3c

Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.

```
<p>
```

```
<date when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date>
```

```
<date when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>
```

```
<time when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-
```

05:00">Jan 4 1999  
at 8 pm</time>  
<time when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds  
</time>  
<date when="1962-10">October of 1962</date>  
<date when="--06-12">June 12th</date>  
<date when="---01">the first of the month</date>  
<date when="--08">August</date>  
<date when="2006">MMVI</date>  
<date when="0056">AD 56</date>  
<date when="-0056">56 BC</date>  
</p>  
This list begins in the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after Pentecost, in that year the  
<date calendar="#julian" when="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>.  
<opener>  
<dateline>  
<placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName>  
<date when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date>  
</dateline>  
<salute>To

	Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday <time when="12:00:00">noon.</time></opener>
notBefore	specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> teidata.te mporal.w 3c
notAfter	specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> teidata.te mporal.w 3c
from	indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> teidata.te mporal.w 3c
to	indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> teidata.te mporal.w 3c

## Schematron

```
<sch:rule context="tei:*[@when]">
<sch:report role="nonfatal"
test="@notBefore|@notAfter|@from|
@to">The @when attribute cannot be
used with any other att.dataable.w3c
attributes.</sch:report> </sch:rule>
```

## Schematron

```
<sch:rule context="tei:*[@from]">
<sch:report role="nonfatal"
test="@notBefore">The @from and
@notBefore attributes cannot be used
together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>
```

## Schematron

```
<sch:rule context="tei:*[@to]">
<sch:report role="nonfatal"
test="@notAfter">The @to and
@notAfter attributes cannot be used
together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>
```

## Example

```
<date from="1863-05-28" to="1863-
06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</
date>
```

## Note

The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition, using the Gregorian calendar.

The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is yyyy-mm-dd, but yyyy, --mm, ---dd, yyyy-mm, or --mm-dd may also be used. For the time part, the form hh:mm:ss is used.

Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.

## att.datcat

**att.datcat** provides attributes that are used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by an external taxonomy, in this way establishing the identity of information containers and values, and providing means of interpreting them. [[10.5.2. Lexical View 19.3. Other Atomic Feature Values](#)]

### Module

tei

### Members

*category taxonomy*

### Attributes

datcat

provides a pointer to a definition of, and/or general information about, (a) an information container (element or attribute) or (b)

	<p>a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by referencing an external taxonomy or ontology. If <i>valueDatcat</i> is present in the immediate context, this attribute takes on role (a), while <i>valueDatcat</i> performs role (b).</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata .pointer separated by whitespace</p>
valueDatcat	<p>provides a definition of, and/or general information about a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by reference to an external taxonomy or ontology. Used especially where a contrast with <i>datcat</i> is needed.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata .pointer separate</p>



	d by whitespa ce
targetDatcat	provides a definition of, and/or general information about, information structure of an object referenced or modeled by the containing element, by reference to an external taxonomy or ontology. This attribute has the characteristics of the <i>datcat</i> attribute, except that it addresses not its containing element, but an object that is being referenced or modeled by its containing element. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurren ces of teidata .pointer separate d by whitespa ce

## Example

The example below presents the TEI encoding of the [name-value pair](#) <part of speech, common noun>, where the name (key) 'part of speech' is abbreviated as 'POS', and the value, 'common noun' is symbolized by 'NN'. The entire name-value pair is encoded by means of the element <f>. In TEI XML, that element acts as the container, labeled with the *name*

attribute. Its contents may be complex or simple. In the case at hand, the content is the symbol 'NN'. The *datcat* attribute relates the feature *name* (i.e., the key) to the data category 'part of speech', while the attribute *valueDatcat* relates the feature *value* to the data category *common noun*. Both these data categories should be defined in an external and preferably open reference taxonomy or ontology.

```
<fs>
  <f datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/
11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-
ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3"
  name="POS">
    <symbol value="NN"
      valueDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/
11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-
224d-6f94-eebbe6861545"/>
    </f>
  <!-- ... -->
</fs>
```

'NN' is the symbol for common noun used e.g. in the [CLAWS-7 tagset](#) defined by the University Centre for Computer Corpus Research on Language at the University of Lancaster. The very same data category used for tagging an early version of the British National Corpus, and coming from the [BNC Basic \(C5\) tagset](#), uses the symbol 'NN0' (rather than 'NN'). Making these values semantically interoperable would be extremely difficult without a human expert if they were not anchored in a single point of an established reference taxonomy of morphosyntactic data categories. In the case at hand, the string '[http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR\\_C-1256\\_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-eebbe6861545](http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-eebbe6861545)' is both a persistent identifier of the data category in question, as well as a pointer to a shared definition of *common noun*. While the symbols 'NN', 'NN0',

and many others (often coming from languages other than English) are implicitly members of the container category ‘part of speech’, it is sometimes useful not to rely on such an implicit relationship but rather use an explicit identifier for that data category, to distinguish it from other morphosyntactic data categories, such as gender, tense, etc. For that purpose, the above example uses the *datcat* attribute to reference a definition of *part of speech*. The reference taxonomy in this example is the [CLARIN Concept Registry](#). If the feature structure markup exemplified above is to be repeated many times in a single document, it is much more efficient to gather the persistent identifiers in a single place and to only reference them, implicitly or directly, from feature structure markup. The following example is much more concise than the one above and relies on the concepts of feature structure declaration and feature value library, discussed in chapter FS.

```
<fs>
  <f fVal="#commonNoun" name="POS
"/>
<!-- ... -->
</fs>
```

The assumption here is that the relevant feature values are collected in a place that the annotation document in question has access to — preferably, a single document per linguistic resource, for example an `<fsdDecl>` that is XIncluded as a sibling of `<text>` or a child of `<encodingDesc>`; a `<taxonomy>` available resource-wide (e.g., in a shared header) is also an option. The example below presents an `<fvLib>` element that collects the relevant feature values (most of them omitted). At the same time, this example shows one way of encoding a *tagset*, i.e., an established inventory of

```

values of (in the case at hand)
morphosyntactic categories.
<fvLib n="POS values">
  <symbol datcat="http://
hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-
396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-
7c344c5f26c3"
  value="NN" xml:id="commonNoun"/
>
  <symbol datcat="http://
hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-
1371_fbebd9ec-a7f4-9a36-d6e9-
88ee16b944ae"
  value="NP" xml:id="properNoun"/>
<!-- ... -->
</fvLib>

```

Note that these Guidelines do not prescribe a specific choice between *datcat* and *valueDatcat* in such cases. The former is the generic way of referencing a data category, whereas the latter is more specific, in that it references a data category that represents a value. The choice between them comes into play where a single element — or a tight element complex, such as the `<f>/<symbol>` complex illustrated above — make it necessary or useful to distinguish between the container data category and its value.

## Example

In the context of dictionaries designed with semantic interoperability in mind, the following example ensures that the `<pos>` element is interpreted as the same information container as in the case of the example of `<f name="POS">` above.

```

<gramGrp>
  <pos datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/
11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-
ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3"
  valueDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/
11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-
224d-6f94-eebbe6861545">NN</pos>
</gramGrp>

```

Efficiency of this type of interoperable markup demands that the references

to the particular data categories should best be provided in a single place within the dictionary (or a single place within the project), rather than being repeated inside every entry. For the container elements, this can be achieved at the level of `<tagUsage>`, although here, the *valueDatcat* attribute should be used, because it is not the `<tagUsage>` element that is associated with the relevant data category, but rather the element `<pos>` (or `<case>`, etc.) that is described by `<tagUsage>`:

```
<tagsDecl partial="true">
<!-- ... -->
  <namespace name="http://www.tei-
c.org/ns/1.0">
    <tagUsage gi="pos"
      targetDatcat="http://
hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-
396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-
7c344c5f26c3">Contains the part of sp
eech.</tagUsage>
    <tagUsage gi="case"
      targetDatcat="http://
hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-
1840_9f4e319c-f233-6c90-9117-
7270e215f039">Contains information
about the grammatical case that the de
scribed form is inflected for.</
tagUsage>
  <!-- ... -->
</namespace>
</tagsDecl>
```

Another possibility is to shorten the URIs by means of the `<prefixDef>` mechanism, as illustrated below:

```
<listPrefixDef>
  <prefixDef ident="ccr" matchPattern
="pos"
    replacementPattern="http://
hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-
396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-
7c344c5f26c3"/>
  <prefixDef ident="ccr" matchPattern
="adj"
    replacementPattern="http://
```

```

hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-
1230_23653c21-fca1-edf8-fd7c-
3df2d6499157"/>
</listPrefixDef>
<!-- ... -->
<entry>
<!--...-->
<form>
  <orth>isotope</orth>
</form>
<gramGrp>
  <pos datcat="ccr:pos"
    valueDatcat="ccr:adj">adj</pos>
</gramGrp>
<!--...-->
</entry>

```

This mechanism creates implications that are not always wanted, among others, in the case at hand, suggesting that the identifiers 'pos' and 'adj' belong to a namespace associated with the CLARIN Concept Repository (CCR), whereas that is solely a shorthand mechanism whose scope is the current resource. Documenting this clearly in the header of the dictionary is therefore advised. Yet another possibility is to associate the information about the relationship between a TEI markup element and the data category that it is intended to model already at the level of modeling the dictionary resource, that is, at the level of the ODD, in the <equiv> element that is a child of <elementSpec> or <attDef>.

## Example

The <taxonomy> element is a handy tool for encoding taxonomies that are later referenced by att.datcat attributes, but it can also act as an intermediary device, for example holding a fragment of an external taxonomy (or 'flattening' an external ontology) that is relevant to the project or document at hand. (It is also imaginable that, for the purpose of the project at hand, the local <taxonomy> element combines vocabularies that

originate from more than one external taxonomy or ontology.) In such cases, the <taxonomy> creates a local layer of indirection: the att.datcat attributes internal to the resource may reference the <category> elements stored in the header (as well as the <taxonomy> element itself), whereas these same <category> and <taxonomy> elements use att.datcat attributes to reference the original taxonomy or ontology.

```

<encodingDesc>
<!-- ... -->
<classDecl>
<!-- ... -->
  <taxonomy datcat="https://
universaldependencies.org/u/dep/
index.html"
    xml:id="UD-SYN">
    <desc>
      <term>UD syntactic relations</
term>
    </desc>
    <category valueDatcat="https://
universaldependencies.org/u/dep/
acl.html"
      xml:id="acl">
      <catDesc>
        <term>acl</term>: Clausal modifi
er of noun (adjectival clause)</
catDesc>
      </category>
      <category valueDatcat="https://
universaldependencies.org/u/dep/acl-
relcl.html"
        xml:id="acl_relcl">
        <catDesc>
          <term>acl:relcl</term>: relative cl
ause modifier</catDesc>
        </category>
        <category valueDatcat="https://
universaldependencies.org/u/dep/
advcl.html"
          xml:id="advcl">
          <catDesc>
            <term>advcl</term>: Adverbial cl
ause modifier</catDesc>

```

```

    </category>
<!-- ... -->
  </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
</encodingDesc>

```

The above fragment was excerpted from the GB subset of the [ParlaMint project](#) in April 2023, and enriched with att.datcat attributes for the purpose of illustrating the mechanism described here. Note that, in the ideal case, the values of att.datcat attributes should be persistent identifiers, and that the addressing scheme of Universal Dependencies is treated here as persistent for the sake of illustration. Note also that the contrast between *datcat* used on <taxonomy> on the one hand, and the *valueDatcat* used on <category> on the other, is not mandatory: both kinds of relations could be encoded by means of the generic *datcat* attribute, but using the former for the container and the latter for the content is more user-friendly. The *targetDatcat* attribute is designed to be used in, e.g., feature structure declarations, and is analogous to the *targetLang* attribute of the att.pointing class, in that it describes the object that is being referenced, rather than the referencing object.

```

<fDecl name="POS"
  targetDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/
11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-
ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3">
  <fDescr>part of speech (morphosynta
ctic category)</fDescr>
  <vRange>
    <vAlt>
      <symbol datcat="http://
hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-
1256_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-
eecbe6861545"
        value="NN"/>
      <symbol datcat="http://
hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-
1371_fbebd9ec-a7f4-9a36-d6e9-

```

## Example



```
88ee16b944ae"
  value="NP"/>
```

```
<!-- ... -->
</vAlt>
</vRange>
</fDecl>
```

Above, the `<fDecl>` uses *targetDatcat*, because if it were to use *datcat*, it would be asserting that it is an instance of the container data category *part of speech*, whereas it is not — it models a container (`<f>`) that encodes a part of speech. Note also that it is the `<f>` that is modeled above, not its values, which are used as direct references to data categories; hence the use of *datcat* in the `<symbol>` element.

## Example

The `att.datcat` attributes can be used for any sort of taxonomies. The example below illustrates their usefulness for describing usage domain labels in dictionaries on the example of the *Dicionário da Língua Portuguesa* by António de Moraes Silva, retro-digitised in the [MORDigital project](#).

```
<!-- in the dictionary header --
><encodingDesc>
  <classDecl>
    <taxonomy xml:id="domains">
<!--...-->
    <category xml:id="domain.medical_
and_health_sciences">
      <catDesc xml:lang="en">Medical a
nd Health Sciences</catDesc>
      <catDesc xml:lang="pt">Ciências
Médicas e da Saúde</catDesc>
      <category valueDatcat="https://
vocabs.rossio.fcsh.unl.pt/pub/
moraes_domains/pt/page/0025"
xml:id="domain.medical_and_healt
h_sciences.medicine">
        <catDesc xml:lang="en">
          <term>Medicine</term>
          <gloss>
<!--...-->
```

```

        </gloss>
        </catDesc>
        <catDesc xml:lang="pt">
        <term>Medicina</term>
        <gloss>
<!--...-->
        </gloss>
        </catDesc>
        </category>
        </category>
<!--...-->
        </taxonomy>
        </classDecl>
</encodingDesc>
<!--

```

inside an <entry> element: -->

```

<usg type="domain"
  valueDatcat="#domain.medical_and_
health_sciences.medicine">Med.</
usg>

```

In the Morais dictionary, the relevant domain labels are in the header, getting referenced inside the dictionary, from <usg> elements. The vocabulary used for dictionary-internal labelling is in turn anchored in the [MorDigital controlled vocabulary service](#) of the NOVA University of Lisbon - School of Social Sciences and Humanities (NOVA FCSH).

## Note

The TEI Abstract Model can be expressed as a hierarchy of attribute-value matrices (AVMs) of various types and of various levels of complexity, nested or grouped in various ways. At the most abstract level, an AVM consists of an information container and the value (contents) of that container.

A simple example of an XML serialization of such structures is, on the one hand, the opening and closing tags that delimit and name the container, and, on the other, the content enclosed by the two tags that constitutes the value. An analogous example is an attribute name and the

value of that attribute.

In a TEI XML example of two equivalent serializations expressing the name-value pair `<part-of-speech,common-noun>`, namely `<pos>commonNoun</pos>` and `pos="common-noun"`, one would classify the element `<pos>` and the attribute `pos` as containers (mapping onto the first member of the relevant name-value pair), while the character data content of `<pos>` or the value of `pos` would be seen as mapping onto the second member of the pair.

The `att.datcat` class provides means of addressing the containers and their values, while at the same time providing a way to interpret them in the context of external taxonomies or ontologies. Aligning e.g. both the `<pos>` element and the `pos` attribute with the same value of an external reference point (i.e., an entry in an agreed taxonomy) affirms the identity of the concept serialised by both the element container and the attribute container, and optionally provides a definition of that concept (in the case at hand, the concept *part of speech*).

The value of the `att.datcat` attributes should be a PID (persistent identifier) that points to a specific — and, ideally, shared — taxonomy or ontology. Among the resources that can, to a lesser or greater extent, be used as inventories of (more or less) standardized linguistic categories are the GOLD ontology, [CLARIN CCR](#), [OLiA](#), or [TermWeb's DatCatInfo](#), and also the [Universal Dependencies](#) inventory, on the assumption that its URIs are going to persist. It is imaginable that a project may choose to address a local taxonomy store instead, but this risks losing the advantage of interchangeability with

other projects.

Historically, *datcat* and *valueDatcat* originate from the (now obsolete) ISO 12620:2009 standard, describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). The current version of that standard, ISO 12620-1, does not standardize the serialization of pointers, merely mentioning the TEI *att.datcat* as an example.

Note that no constraint prevents the occurrence of a combination of *att.datcat* attributes: the `<fDecl>` element, which is a natural bearer of the *targetDatcat* attribute, is an instance of a specific modeling element, and, in principle, could be semantically fixed by an appropriate reference taxonomy of modeling devices.

## att.declarable

**att.declarable** provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose *decls* attribute. [[16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei	
<b>Members</b>	<i>availability bibl listBibl listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace particDesc settingDesc sourceDesc</i>	
<b>Attributes</b>	default	indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.
	<b>Status</b>	Optional
	<b>Datatype</b>	teidata.truthValue
	<b>Legal values are:</b>	<b>true</b> This element is selected if its parent

nt is  
selec  
ted

**false**

This  
elem  
ent  
can  
only  
be  
selec  
ted  
expli  
citly,  
unle  
ss it  
is  
the  
only  
one  
of its  
kind,  
in  
whic  
h  
case  
it is  
selec  
ted if  
its  
pare  
nt is  
selec  
ted.  
[Def  
ault]

## Note

The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter [16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](#). Only one element of a particular type may have a *default* attribute with a value of *true*.

## att.declaring

**att.declaring** provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus

overriding the inherited default for that element. [[16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<i>body p ptr term text</i>
<b>Attributes</b>	<div> <div>decls</div> <div>(declarations)</div> <div>identifies one or more <i>declarable elements</i> within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.</div> <div> <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace </div> </div>

**Note** The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter [16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](#).

## att.dimensions

**att.dimensions** provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<i>date</i>
<b>Attributes</b>	<div> <div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>att.ranging <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>@atLeast</i></li> <li><i>@atMost</i></li> <li><i>@min</i></li> <li><i>@max</i></li> <li><i>@confidence</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul> </div> <div> <div>unit</div> <div>names the unit used for the measurement</div> <div> <b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> teidata.enumerated </div> </div> </div>

	<p><b>Suggest cm</b>  <b>ed</b> (cent  <b>values</b> imet  <b>include:</b> res)</p> <p><b>mm</b>  (milli  metr  es)</p> <p><b>in</b>  (inch  es)</p> <p><b>line</b>  lines  of  text</p> <p><b>char</b>  (char  acte  rs)  char  acter  s of  text</p>
quantity	<p>specifies the length  in the units  specified</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> teidata.n  umeric</p>
extent	<p>indicates the size  of the object  concerned using a  project-specific  vocabulary  combining quantity  and units in a  single string of  words.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> teidata.te  xt</p> <p>&lt;gap extent="5 wo  rds"/&gt;  &lt;height extent="h  alf the page"/&gt;</p>
precision	<p>characterizes the  precision of the</p>

	values specified by the other attributes.
	<b>Status</b> Optional
	<b>Datatype</b> teidata.ce
	rtainty
scope	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.
	<b>Status</b> Optional
	<b>Datatype</b> teidata.e
	numerate d
	<b>Sample</b> all
	<b>values</b> meas
	<b>include:</b> urem
	ent
	appli
	es to
	all
	insta
	nces.
	<b>most</b>
	meas
	urem
	ent
	appli
	es to
	most
	of
	the
	insta
	nces
	insp
	ecte
	d.
	<b>range</b>
	meas
	urem
	ent
	appli
	es to



only  
the  
speci  
fied  
rang  
e of  
insta  
nces.

## att.docStatus

**att.docStatus** provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.

**Module**

**Members**

**Attributes**

tei

*bibl change revisionDesc*

status

describes the  
status of a  
document either  
currently or, when  
associated with a  
dated element, at  
the time indicated.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.e  
numerate  
d

**Sample  
values** approved

**include:**

**candidat  
e**

**cleared**

**deprecat  
ed**

**draft**  
[Def  
ault]

**embargo  
ed**

**expired**

**frozen**

**galley**

proposed  
published  
recommendation  
submitted  
unfinished  
withdrawn

**Example**

```
<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change status="published"
    when="2010-10-21"/>
  <change status="cleared" when="201
0-10-02"/>
  <change status="embargoed"
    when="2010-08-02"/>
  <change status="frozen" when="201
0-05-01"
    who="#MSM"/>
  <change status="draft" when="2010-
03-01"
    who="#LB"/>
</revisionDesc>
```

**att.editLike**

**att.editLike** provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [[3.5. Simple Editorial Changes](#) [11.3.1. Origination](#) [14.3.2. The Person Element](#) [12.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work](#)]

**Module**

**Members**

**Attributes**

tei	
<i>affiliation</i>	
<i>date</i>	
<i>event</i>	
<i>eventName</i>	
<i>gender</i>	
<i>name</i>	
<i>org</i>	
<i>person</i>	
<i>place</i>	
<i>placeName</i>	
<i>evidence</i>	indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the

reliability or  
accuracy of the  
intervention or  
interpretation.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞

occurren  
ces  
of teidata  
.enumera  
ted  
separate  
d by  
whitespa  
ce

**Suggest internal  
ed** ther

**values** e is

**include:** inter  
nal  
evid  
ence  
to  
supp  
ort  
the  
inter  
venti  
on.

**external**  
ther  
e is  
exter  
nal  
evid  
ence  
to  
supp  
ort  
the  
inter  
venti  
on.

**conjectu  
re**

the  
inter

venti  
on or  
inter  
pret  
ation  
has  
been  
mad  
e by  
the  
edito  
r,  
catal  
ogue  
r, or  
schol  
ar on  
the  
basis  
of  
their  
expe  
rtise.

instant

indicates whether  
this is an instant  
revision or not.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.x  
TruthVal  
ue

**Default** false

## Note

The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.

Each pointer on the *source* (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a <witness>, <msDesc>, or <bibl> element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned.

## att.fragmentable

**att.fragmentable** provides attributes for representing fragmentation of a

structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.

<b>Module</b>	tei	
<b>Members</b>	<i>p</i>	
<b>Attributes</b>	part	specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.
<b>Status</b>	Optional	
<b>Datatype</b>	teidata.enumerated	
<b>Legal values are:</b>	Y	(yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect
	N	(no) the element is

not  
frag  
ment  
ed,  
or no  
clai  
m is  
mad  
e as  
to its  
com  
plete  
ness  
*[Def  
ault]*

**I** (initi  
al)  
this  
is  
the  
initia  
l  
part  
of a  
frag  
ment  
ed  
elem  
ent

**M** (med  
ial)  
this  
is a  
medi  
al  
part  
of a  
frag  
ment  
ed  
elem  
ent

**F** (final  
) this

is  
the  
final  
part  
of a  
frag  
ment  
ed  
elem  
ent

**Note** The values *I*, *M*, or *F* should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted.

## att.global

**att.global** provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [[1.3.1.1. Global Attributes](#)]

### Module

### Members

tei  
*TEI affiliation availability bibl bloc  
body catDesc category change  
classDecl country date desc edition  
editionStmt editor encodingDesc event  
eventName fileDesc forename gender  
idno item licence list listBibl  
listChange listEvent listOrg listPerson  
listPlace name nameLink note org p  
particDesc person place placeName  
profileDesc ptr pubPlace  
publicationStmt publisher resp  
respStmt revisionDesc roleName  
settingDesc sourceDesc surname  
taxonomy teiHeader term text title  
titleStmt*

### Attributes

- att.global.linking
  - @corresp
  - @synch
  - @sameAs
  - @copyOf

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@next</i></li> <li>• <i>@prev</i></li> <li>• <i>@exclude</i></li> <li>• <i>@select</i></li> <li>• att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@rend</i></li> <li>• <i>@style</i></li> <li>• <i>@rendition</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@cert</i></li> <li>• <i>@resp</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@source</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
xml:id	<p>(identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">ID</a></p> <p><b>Note</b> The <i>xml:id</i> attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section <a href="#">3.11. Reference Systems</a>.</p>
n	<p>(number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> <a href="#">teidata.text</a></p> <p><b>Note</b> The value</p>



of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.

xml:lang

(language) indicates the language of the element content using a 'tag' generated

according to [BCP 47](#).

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.language

<p> ... The consequences of

this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last

<foreign xml:lang="rap">ariki</

foreign> or chief

(Routledge 1920:205,210) and their c

onnections to

ancestral territorial organization.</p>

**Note** The *xml:lang* value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify *xml:lang* at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a

different  
default  
may be  
needed  
for the  
<teiHeader> from  
that  
needed  
for the  
associated  
resource  
element  
or  
elements,  
and that  
a single  
TEI  
document  
may  
contain  
texts in  
many  
languages.  
s.

Only  
attributes  
with free  
text  
values  
(rare in  
these  
guidelines)  
will be  
in the  
scope of  
*xml:lang*.

The  
authoritative  
list  
of  
registered  
language  
subtags  
is

maintained by IANA and is available at <https://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>.

For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see <https://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/>, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see <https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php>.

The value used

must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its *ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF)Internet

Engineering Task Force definitions.

xml:base

provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.pointer

```
<div type="bibl">
  <head>Selections
from <title level="
m">The Collected
Letters of Robert S
outhey. Part 1: 179
1-1797</title>
</head>
  <listBibl xml:base
="https://romantic-
circles.org/sites/
default/files/
imported/editions/
southey_letters/
XML/">
    <bibl>
      <ref target="lett
erEEEd.26.3.xml">
        <title>Robert S
outhey to Grosveno
r Charles Bedford<
/title>, <date when
="1792-04-03">3 A
pril 1792</date>.
      </ref>
    </bibl>
    <bibl>
      <ref target="lett
erEEEd.26.57.xml">
        <title>Robert S
outhey to Anna Se
ward</title>, <dat
```

xml:space

e when="1793-09-18">18 September 1793</date>.

</ref>

</bibl>

<bibl>

<ref target="letterEEd.26.85.xml">

<title>Robert Southey to Robert Lovell</title>, <date from="1794-04-05"

to="1794-04-06">5-6 April, 1794</date>.

</ref>

</bibl>

</listBibl>

</div>

signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.enumerated

**Legal default**

**values are:** signals that the application's default white-space processing mode

es  
are  
acce  
ptabl  
e

**preserve**  
indic  
ates  
the  
inten  
t  
that  
appli  
catio  
ns  
pres  
erve  
all  
whit  
e  
spac  
e

**Note** The [XML  
specificat  
ion](#)  
provides  
further  
guidance  
on the  
use of  
this  
attribute.  
Note that  
many  
parsers  
may not  
handle  
xml:spac  
e  
correctly.

## att.global.linking

**att.global.linking** provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [[17. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment](#)]

**Module** linking

**Members** *att.global*[*TEI affiliation availability*  
*bibl bloc body catDesc category*



## Attributes

*change classDecl country date desc  
 edition editionStmt editor  
 encodingDesc event eventName  
 fileDesc forename gender idno item  
 licence list listBibl listChange listEvent  
 listOrg listPerson listPlace name  
 nameLink note org p particDesc  
 person place placeName profileDesc  
 ptr pubPlace publicationStmt  
 publisher resp respStmt revisionDesc  
 roleName settingDesc sourceDesc  
 surname taxonomy teiHeader term  
 text title titleStmt]*

corresp (corresponds)  
 points to elements  
 that correspond to  
 the current  
 element in some  
 way.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** 1-∞  
 occurrences  
 of teidata  
 .pointer  
 separate  
 d by  
 whitespace

```

<group>
  <text xml:id="t1-
g1-t1"
  xml:lang="mi">
    <body xml:id="t1-
g1-t1-body1">
      <div type="chapter">
        <head>He Wha
kamaramatanga m
o te Ture Hoko, Rii
hi hoki, i nga When
ua Maori, 1876.</
head>
        <p>...</p>
      </div>
    </body>
  </text>
</text xml:id="t1-
    
```

```

g1-t2"
  xml:lang="en">
    <body corresp="
#t1-g1-t1-body1"
  xml:id="t1-g1-t2-
body1">
    <div type="chapter">
      <head>An Act to
      regulate the Sale,
      Letting, and Dispos-
      al of Native Lands,
      1876.</head>
      <p>...</p>
    </div>
  </body>
</text>
</group>

```

In this example a `<group>` contains two `<text>`s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using *corresp*. The language is indicated using *xml:lang*, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the *corresp* and the tag pointed to by the *corresp* inherit the value from their immediate parent.

```

<!-- In a placeogra-
phy called "places.
xml" --><place cor-
resp="people.xml#
LOND2 people.xml
#GENI1"
xml:id="LOND1">
  <placeName>Lon

```

```

don</placeName>
  <desc>The city of
London...</desc>
</place>
<!-- In a literary pe
rsonography called
"people.xml" -->
<person corresp="
places.xml#LOND1
#GENI1"
  xml:id="LOND2">
  <persName type=
"lit">London</
persName>
  <note>
    <p>Allegorical ch
aracter representin
g the city of <place
Name ref="places.
xml#LOND1">Lon
don</
placeName>.</p>
  </note>
</person>
<person corresp="
places.xml#LOND1
#LOND2"
  xml:id="GENI1">
  <persName type=
"lit">London's Gen
ius</persName>
  <note>
    <p>Personificatio
n of London's geniu
s. Appears as an
    allegorical char
acter in mayoral sh
ows.
  </p>
  </note>
</person>
In this example, a
<place> element
containing
information about
the city of London
is linked with two
<person>

```

	<p>elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them.</p>
synch	<p>(synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace</p>
sameAs	<p>points to an element that is the same as the current element.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> teidata.pointer</p>
copyOf	<p>points to an element of which the current element is a copy.</p>

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.p  
 ointer  
**Note** Any  
 content  
 of the  
 current  
 element  
 should be  
 ignored.  
 Its true  
 content is  
 that of  
 the  
 element  
 being  
 pointed  
 at.

next

(next) points to the  
 next element of a  
 virtual aggregate  
 of which the  
 current element is  
 part.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.p  
 ointer  
**Note** It is  
 recomme  
 nded that  
 the  
 element  
 indicated  
 be of the  
 same  
 type as  
 the  
 element  
 bearing  
 this  
 attribute.

prev

(previous) points to  
 the previous  
 element of a virtual  
 aggregate of which  
 the current  
 element is part.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.pointer  
**Note** It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.

exclude

points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** 1-∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

select

selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced

by the number of  
alternants not  
selected.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞  
occurrences  
of teidata  
.pointer  
separated by  
whitespace

**Note** This  
attribute  
should be  
placed on  
an  
element  
which is  
superordi-  
nate to  
all of the  
alternant  
s from  
which the  
selection  
is being  
made.

## att.global.rendition

**att.global.rendition** provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [[1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators](#)]

**Module**

**Members**

tei  
*att.global*[TEI affiliation availability  
bibl bloc body catDesc category  
change classDecl country date desc  
edition editionStmt editor  
encodingDesc event eventName  
fileDesc forename gender idno item  
licence list listBibl listChange listEvent  
listOrg listPerson listPlace name  
nameLink note org p particDesc  
person place placeName profileDesc  
ptr pubPlace publicationStmt  
publisher resp respStmt revisionDesc  
roleName settingDesc sourceDesc

## Attributes

*surname taxonomy teiHeader term  
text title titleStmt]*

*rend*

(rendition)

indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞

occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

<head rend="align (center) case(allcaps)">

<lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On Her <lb/><hi rend="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</hi>.

</head>

**Note**

These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the *rend* attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much



from text  
to text  
and the  
decision  
to record  
or ignore  
individual  
character  
istics  
varies too  
much  
from  
project to  
project.  
Some  
potentiall  
y useful  
conventio  
ns are  
noted  
from time  
to time at  
appropria  
te points  
in the  
Guideline  
s. The  
values of  
the *rend*  
attribute  
are a set  
of  
sequence  
-  
indetermi  
nate  
individual  
tokens  
separate  
d by  
whitespa  
ce.

style

contains an  
expression in some  
formal style  
definition language  
which defines the

rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.text

```
<head style="text-align: center; font-variant: small-caps">
  <lb/>To The <lb/>
>Duchesse <lb/>of
<lb/>Newcastle, <
lb/>On Her
<lb/>
  <hi style="font-variant: normal">N
ew Blazing-
World</hi>.
</head>
```

**Note** Unlike the attribute values of *rend*, which uses whitespace as a separator, the *style* attribute may contain whitespace. This attribute is intended for recording inline stylistic information concerning

ng the  
source,  
not any  
particula  
r output.

The  
formal  
language  
in which  
values for  
this  
attribute  
are  
expresse  
d may be  
specified  
using the  
<styleDef  
Decl>  
element  
in the  
TEI  
header.

If *style*  
and  
*rendition*  
are both  
present  
on an  
element,  
then  
*style*  
overrides  
or  
complem  
ents  
*rendition*.  
*style*  
should  
not be  
used in  
conjuncti  
on with  
*rend*,  
because  
the latter  
does not

	employ a formal style definition language.
rendition	<p>points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata .pointer separated by whitespace</p> <pre> &lt;head rendition="#ac #sc"&gt;   &lt;lb/&gt;To The &lt;lb/&gt;Duchesse &lt;lb/&gt;of   &lt;lb/&gt;Newcastle, &lt;lb/&gt;On Her   &lt;lb/&gt;   &lt;hi rendition="#normal"&gt;New Blazing-World&lt;/hi&gt;. &lt;/head&gt; &lt;!-- elsewhere... --&gt; &lt;rendition scheme="css"   xml:id="sc"&gt;font-variant: small-caps&lt;/rendition&gt; &lt;rendition scheme="css"   xml:id="normal"&gt;font-variant: normal&lt;/rendition&gt; &lt;rendition scheme="css"   xml:id="ac"&gt;text-</pre>

```
align: center</  
rendition>
```

**Note** The *rendition* attribute is used in a very similar way to the *class* attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper.

If *rendition* is used to refer to a style definition in a formal language

like CSS,  
it is  
recommended that  
it not be  
used in  
conjunction with  
*rend*.  
Where  
both  
*rendition*  
and *rend*  
are  
supplied,  
the latter  
is  
understood to  
override  
or  
complement the  
former.

Each URI  
provided  
should  
indicate a  
<rendition>  
element  
defining  
the  
intended  
rendition  
in terms  
of some  
appropriate style  
language,  
as  
indicated  
by the  
*scheme*  
attribute.

## att.global.responsibility

**att.global.responsibility** provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [[1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility](#) [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes](#) [12.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes](#) [18.3. Spans and Interpretations](#) [14.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents](#)]

### Module

tei

### Members

*att.global*[*TEI affiliation availability*  
*bibl bloc body catDesc category*  
*change classDecl country date desc*  
*edition editionStmt editor*  
*encodingDesc event eventName*  
*fileDesc forename gender idno item*  
*licence list listBibl listChange listEvent*  
*listOrg listPerson listPlace name*  
*nameLink note org p particDesc*  
*person place placeName profileDesc*  
*ptr pubPlace publicationStmt*  
*publisher resp respStmt revisionDesc*  
*roleName settingDesc sourceDesc*  
*surname taxonomy teiHeader term*  
*text title titleStmt*]

### Attributes

cert	(certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> teidata.pr obCert
resp	(responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separate

**Note**

d by  
whitespace  
ce  
To reduce  
the  
ambiguity of a  
*resp*  
pointing  
directly  
to a  
person or  
organization, we  
recommend that  
*resp* be  
used to  
point not  
to an  
agent  
(`<person`  
`>` or  
`<org>`)  
but to a  
`<respSt`  
`mt>`,  
`<author`  
`>`,  
`<editor>`  
or similar  
element  
which  
clarifies  
the exact  
role  
played by  
the  
agent.  
Pointing  
to  
multiple  
`<respSt`  
`mt>`s  
allows  
the  
encoder  
to specify



clearly  
each of  
the roles  
played in  
part of a  
TEI file  
(creating,  
transcribi  
ng,  
encoding,  
editing,  
proofing  
etc.).

### Example

Blessed are the  
<choice>  
  <sic>cheesemakers</sic>  
  <corr cert="high" resp="#editor">pe  
acemakers</corr>  
</choice>: for they shall be called the  
children of God.

### Example

```
<!-- in the <text> ... --><lg>
<!-- ... -->
<l>Punkes, Panders, bafe extortionizi
ng
  sla<choice>
  <sic>n</sic>
  <corr resp="#JENS1_transcriber">u
</corr>
  </choice>es,</l>
<!-- ... -->
</lg>
<!-- in the <teiHeader> ... -->
<!-- ... -->
<respStmt xml:id="JENS1_transcriber
">
  <resp when="2014">Transcriber</
resp>
  <name>Janelle Jenstad</name>
</respStmt>
```

## att.global.source

**att.global.source** provides attributes used by elements to point to an external source. [[1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility](#) [3.3.3. Quotation](#) [8.3.4. Writing](#)]

### Module

tei

### Members

*att.global*[*TEI affiliation availability*]

*bibl bloc body catDesc category  
 change classDecl country date desc  
 edition editionStmt editor  
 encodingDesc event eventName  
 fileDesc forename gender idno item  
 licence list listBibl listChange listEvent  
 listOrg listPerson listPlace name  
 nameLink note org p particDesc  
 person place placeName profileDesc  
 ptr pubPlace publicationStmt  
 publisher resp respStmt revisionDesc  
 roleName settingDesc sourceDesc  
 surname taxonomy teiHeader term  
 text title titleStmt]*

## Attributes

source	<p>specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata .pointer separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>Schematron</b> &lt;sch:rule context="tei:*[@source]"&gt;          &lt;sch:let name="srcs" value="tokenize(normalize-space(@source),' ')"&gt;          &lt;sch:report test="( self::tei:classRef   self::tei:dataRef   self::tei:e</p>
--------	---

lementRef |  
 self::tei:macroRef |  
 self::tei:moduleRef |  
 self::tei:schemaSpec ) and  
 \$srcs[2]"  
 > When used on a  
 schema description  
 element (like  
 <sch:value-of select="name(./)">), the  
 @source attribute  
 should have only  
 1 value. (This one  
 has  
 <sch:value-of select="count(\$srcs)">.  
 .)  
 </sch:report>  
 </sch:rule>  
 e>

**Note**

The *source* attribute points to an external source. When used on

an element describing a schema component (<classRef>, <dataRef>, <elementRef>, <macroRef>, <moduleRef>, or <schemaSpec>), it identifies the source from which declarations for the components should be obtained.

On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.

In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative URI, a private scheme URI of the form `tei:x.y.z`, where `x.y.z` indicates the version number, e.g. `tei:4.3.2` for TEI P5 release 4.3.2 or (as a special case) `tei:current` for whatever is the latest release, or a private scheme URI that is expanded to an absolute

URI as documented in a <prefixDef>.

When used on elements describing schema components, *source* should have only one value; when used on other elements multiple values are permitted.

### Example

```
<p>
<!-- ... --> As Willard McCarty (<bibl xml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>)
tells us, <quote source="#mcc_2012">'Collaboration' is a problematic and should be a contested
term.</quote>
```

```
<!-- ... -->
</p>
```

### Example

```
<p>
<!-- ... -->
<quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Grammatical theories are in flux, and the more we learn, the
less we seem to know.</quote>
<!-- ... -->
</p>
<!-- ... -->
<bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed">
<title level="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</title>,
```

<edition>15th edition</edition>. <pubPlace>Chicago</pubPlace>: <publisher>University of Chicago Press</publisher> (<date>2003</date>), <biblScope unit="page">p.147</biblScope>.

## Example

</bibl>  
<elementRef key="p" source="tei:2.0.1"/>

Include in the schema an element named <p> available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release.

## Example

<schemaSpec ident="myODD" source="mycompiledODD.xml">  
<!-- further declarations specifying the components required -->  
</schemaSpec>

Create a schema using components taken from the file mycompiledODD.xml.

## att.internetMedia

**att.internetMedia** provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.

**Module**

tei

**Members**

ptr

**Attributes**

mimeType

(MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞

occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

## Example

In this example *mimeType* is used to indicate that the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8.

**Note**

```
<ref mimeType="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8" target="https://raw.githubusercontent.com/TEIC/TEI/dev/P5/Source/guidelines-en.xml"/>
```

This attribute class provides an attribute for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, using a value taken from a standard taxonomy. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Media Type system. This typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in [RFC 2046](#). The [list of types](#) is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). The *mimeType* attribute must have a value taken from this list.

**att.locatable**

**att.locatable** provides attributes for referencing locations by pointing to entries in a canonical list of places. [[2.3.9. The Unit Declaration 14.3.4.3. States, Traits, and Events](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei	
<b>Members</b>	event	
<b>Attributes</b>	where	indicates one or more locations by pointing to a <place> element or other canonical description. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata .pointer separated by whitespace

**att.naming**

**att.naming** provides attributes common to elements which refer to named



persons, places, organizations etc. [[3.6.1. Referring Strings](#) [14.3.7. Names and Nyms](#)]

## Module

## Members

## Attributes

tei

*att.personal[eventName forename  
name placeName roleName surname]  
affiliation bloc country editor event  
pubPlace*

- att.canonical
  - @key
  - @ref

role

may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞

occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

nymRef

(reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (*nym*) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞

occurrences

ces  
of teidata  
.pointer  
separate  
d by  
whitespa  
ce  
**Note** The value  
must  
point  
directly  
to one or  
more  
XML  
elements  
by means  
of one or  
more  
URIs,  
separate  
d by  
whitespa  
ce. If  
more  
than one  
is  
supplied,  
the  
implicati  
on is that  
the name  
is  
associate  
d with  
several  
distinct  
canonical  
names.

## **att.personal**

**att.personal** (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [[14.2.1. Personal Names](#)]

### **Module**

tei

### **Members**

*eventName forename name*

*placeName roleName surname*

### **Attributes**

- att.naming

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@role</i></li> <li>• <i>@nymRef</i></li> <li>• att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@key</i></li> <li>• <i>@ref</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
full		<p>indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> teidata.enumerated</p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b> yes (yes) the name component is spelled out in full. <i>[Default]</i></p> <p><b>abb</b> (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form</p>

**init** .  
(initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial.

**sort** (sort) specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name.  
**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.count

**att.placement**

**att.placement** provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [[3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions](#) [12.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei	
<b>Members</b>	<i>note</i>	
<b>Attributes</b>	place	specifies where this item is placed. <b>Status</b> Recommended <b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

ce  
**Suggest top**  
**ed** at  
**values** the  
**include:** top  
of  
the  
page  
**bottom**  
at  
the  
foot  
of  
the  
page  
**margin**  
in  
the  
mar  
gin  
(left,  
right  
, or  
both  
)  
**opposite**  
on  
the  
oppo  
site,  
i.e.  
facin  
g,  
page  
**overleaf**  
on  
the  
othe  
r  
side  
of  
the  
leaf  
**above**  
abov  
e the  
line

**right**

to  
the  
right  
, e.g.  
to  
the  
right  
of a  
verti  
cal  
line  
of  
text,  
or to  
the  
right  
of a  
figur  
e

**below**

belo  
w  
the  
line

**left**

to  
the  
left,  
e.g.  
to  
the  
left  
of a  
verti  
cal  
line  
of  
text,  
or to  
the  
left  
of a  
figur  
e

**end**

at

the  
end  
of  
e.g.  
chap  
ter  
or  
volu  
me.

**inline**

withi  
n the  
body  
of  
the  
text.

**inspace**

in a  
pred  
efine  
d  
spac  
e,  
for  
exa  
mple  
left  
by  
an  
earli  
er  
scrib  
e.

```
<add place="margin">[An addition wr  
itten in the margin]  
</add>
```

```
<add place="bottom opposite">[An a  
ddition written at t  
he
```

```
foot of the current  
page and also on th  
e facing page]</  
add>
```

```
<note place="bottom">Ibid, p.7</
```

note>

## att.pointing

**att.pointing** provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [[1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators](#) [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei	
<b>Members</b>	<i>licence note ptr term</i>	
<b>Attributes</b>	targetLang	specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by <i>target</i> , using a 'language tag' generated according to <a href="#">BCP 47</a> .
	<b>Status</b>	Optional
	<b>Datatype</b>	teidata.language
	<b>Schematron</b>	<pre>&lt;sch:rule context= "tei:*[not (self::tei:schemaSpec)] [@targetLang]"&gt; &lt;sch:assert test= "@targetLang" &gt;@targetLang should only be used on &lt;sch:name/&gt; if @target is specified. &lt;/sch:assert&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt; &lt;linkGrp xml:id="p</pre>



```

ol-swh_aln_2.1-
linkGrp">
  <ptr target="pol/
UDHR/
text.xml#pol_txt_1-
head"
  targetLang="pl"
  type="tuv"
  xml:id="pol-
swh_aln_2.1.1-
ptr"/>
  <ptr target="swh/
UDHR/
text.xml#swh_txt_1-
-head"
  targetLang="sw"
  type="tuv"
  xml:id="pol-
swh_aln_2.1.2-
ptr"/>
</linkGrp>

```

In the example above, the <linkGrp> combines pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili.

**Note** The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language>

element with a matching value for its *ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF)Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

target

specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References.  
**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** 1-∞

occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

**Note** One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. TEI %20Consortium.

evaluate

(evaluate) specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.e  
numerate  
d

**Legal  
values  
are:**

**all**

if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.

**one**

if the  
elem  
ent  
point  
ed to  
is  
itself  
a  
point  
er,  
then  
its  
targ  
et  
(whe  
ther  
a  
point  
er or  
not)  
is  
take  
n as  
the  
targ  
et of  
this  
point  
er.

**none**

no  
furth  
er  
eval  
uatio  
n of  
targ  
ets is  
carri  
ed  
out  
beyo  
nd  
that  
need  
ed to  
find  
the

element specified in the pointer's target.

**Note** If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.

## att.ranging

**att.ranging** provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.

**Module**

**Members**

**Attributes**

tei

*att.dimensions[date]*

atLeast

gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.numeric

atMost

gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

**Status** Optional

	<b>Datatype</b> teidata.n umeric
min	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> teidata.n umeric
max	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> teidata.n umeric
confidence	specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by <i>min</i> and <i>max</i> , or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> teidata.pr obability

### Example

The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from  
~~rend="overstrike">  
 <gap atLeast="1" atMost="2"  
 extent="one or two letters" reason="illegible" unit="chars"/>  
</del>~~

Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York.

## Example

Americares has been supporting the health sector in Eastern Europe since 1986, and since 1992 has provided `<measure atLeast="120000000" commodity="currency" unit="USD">` more than \$120m`</measure>` in aid to Ukrainians.

## att.sortable

**att.sortable** provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [[10.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure](#)]

### Module

tei

### Members

*bibl event idno item list listBibl listChange listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace org person place term*

### Attributes

sortKey

supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.word

David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen `<index indexName="NAMES">`  
`<term sortKey="Azarya_Josiah_Kohen">`Josiah ha-Kohen  
 b. Azarya`</term>`  
`</index>` b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was David's own first cousin.

**Note** The sort key is used to



determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produce the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent

Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language

dictionary  
 es, an  
 entry for  
 4-*H* will  
 often  
 appear  
 alphabeti  
 zed  
 under  
 ‘fourh’,  
 and  
*McCoy*  
 may be  
 alphabeti  
 zed  
 under  
 ‘maccoy’,  
 while *A1*,  
*A4*, and  
*A5* may  
 all  
 appear in  
 numeric  
 order  
 ‘alphabet  
 ized’  
 between  
 ‘a-’ and  
 ‘AA’. The  
 sort key  
 is  
 required  
 if the  
 orthogra  
 phy of  
 the  
 dictionar  
 y entry  
 does not  
 suffice to  
 determin  
 e its  
 location.

## **att.typed**

**att.typed** provides attributes that can be used to classify or subclassify  
 elements in any way. [[1.3.1. Attribute Classes](#) [18.1.1. Words and Above](#) [3.6.1.](#)

[Referring Strings](#) [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References](#) [3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions](#) [3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse](#) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](#) [4.1.1. Un-numbered Divisions](#) [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions](#) [4.2.1. Headings and Trailers](#) [4.4. Virtual Divisions](#) [14.3.2.3. Personal Relationships](#) [12.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work](#) [17.1.1. Pointers and Links](#) [17.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors](#) [13.2. Linking the Apparatus to the Text](#) [23.5.1.2. Defining Content Models: RELAX NG](#) [8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts](#) [24.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists](#)

## Module

tei

## Members

*TEI affiliation bibl bloc change country date desc event eventName forename gender idno list listBibl listChange listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace name nameLink note org place placeName ptr roleName surname term text title*

## Attributes

type

characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.enumerated

<div type="verse"

>

<head>Night in Terras</head>

<lg type="stanza"

>

<l>At evening tramp  
ing on the hot white road</l>

<l>...</l>

</lg>

<lg type="stanza"

>

<l>A wind sprang  
up from nowhere as  
the sky</l>

<l>...</l>

</lg>

</div>

**Note** The type

attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of att.typed, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.

subtype

(subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.e  
 numerated

**Note** The *subtype* attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided

by its  
type  
attribute.

## Schematron

```
<sch:rule context="tei:*[@subtype]">
<sch:assert test="@type">The
<sch:name/> element should not be
categorized in detail with @subtype
unless also categorized in general with
@type</sch:assert> </sch:rule>
```

## Note

When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the <valList> element in the project-specific schema description, as described in [24.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists](#) .

## att.written

**att.written** provides attributes to indicate the hand in which the content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [[1.3.1. Attribute Classes](#)]

### Module

tei

### Members

*note p text*

### Attributes

hand

points to a  
<handNote>  
element describing  
the hand  
considered  
responsible for the  
content of the  
element concerned.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.p  
ointer

## Macros

### macro.limitedContent

**macro.limitedContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

### Module

tei

### Used by

desc

## Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="0">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"
  />
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

## Declaration

```
tei_macro.limitedContent =
  ( text | tei_model.limitedPhrase | tei_
model.inter )*
```

## macro.paraContent

**macro.paraContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

p title

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="0">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.paraPart"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

## Declaration

```
tei_macro.paraContent = ( text | tei_m
odel.paraPart )*
```

## macro.phraseSeq

**macro.phraseSeq** (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [[1.4.1. Standard Content Models](#)]

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

affiliation bloc country edition editor  
eventName forename gender name  
nameLink placeName pubPlace  
publisher roleName surname term

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="0">
    <textNode/>
```

```

    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.attributable"/>
  >
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

## Declaration

```

tei_macro.phraseSeq =
(
  text
  | tei_model.gLike
  | tei_model.attributable
  | tei_model.phrase
  | tei_model.global
)*

```

## macro.phraseSeq.limited

**macro.phraseSeq.limited** (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [[1.4.1. Standard Content Models](#)]

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

resp

**Content model**

```

<content>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="0">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"
  />
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

## Declaration

```

tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited =
( text | tei_model.limitedPhrase | tei_
model.global )*

```

## macro.specialPara

**macro.specialPara** ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

**Module**

tei

**Used by**  
**Content model**

change item licence note

```
<content>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="0">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.inter"/>
    <classRef key="model.divPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

**Declaration**

```
tei_macro.specialPara =
(
  text
  | tei_model.gLike
  | tei_model.phrase
  | tei_model.inter
  | tei_model.divPart
  | tei_model.global
)*
```

## ***Datatypes***

### **teidata.certainty**

**teidata.certainty** defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

teidata.probCert

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <valList type="closed">
    <valItem ident="high"/>
    <valItem ident="medium"/>
    <valItem ident="low"/>
    <valItem ident="unknown"/>
  </valList>
</content>
```

**Declaration**

```
tei_teidata.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"
```

**Note**

Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values *high*,



*medium*, or *low*. The value *unknown* should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter.

## teidata.count

**teidata.count** defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger" />
</content>
```

**Declaration**

```
tei_teidata.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger
```

**Note**

Any positive integer value or zero is permitted

## teidata.duration.iso

**teidata.duration.iso** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/;+\\-]" />
</content>
```

**Declaration**

```
tei_teidata.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/;+\\-]" }
```

**Example**

```
<time dur-iso="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</time>
```

**Example**

```
<date dur-iso="P1,5D">a day and a half</date>
```

**Example**

```
<date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</date>
```

**Example**

```
<time dur-iso="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>
```

**Note**

A duration is expressed as a sequence

of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either . or , as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair.

For complete details, see ISO 8601 *Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times*.

## teidata.duration.w3c

**teidata.duration.w3c** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.

**Module** `tei`

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="duration"/>
</content>
```

## Declaration

```
tei_teidata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration
```

## Example

```
<time dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</time>
```

## Example

```
<date dur="P1DT12H">a day and a half</date>
```

## Example

```
<date dur="P7D">a week</date>
```

## Example

```
<time dur="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>
```

## Note

A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S

number, which may have a decimal component (using . as the decimal point). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair.

For complete details, see the [W3C specification](#).

## teidata.enumerated

**teidata.enumerated** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.

**Module** tei  
**Used by** teidata.gender teidata.sexElement:  
**Content model**

```
<content>
  <dataRef key="teidata.word"/>
</content>
```

## Declaration

### Note

tei teidata.enumerated = teidata.word  
 Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'word' which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a <valList> element.

## teidata.gender

**teidata.gender** defines the range of attribute values used to represent the gender of a person, persona, or character.

**Module** tei  
**Used by** Element:  
**Content model**

```
<content>
  <dataRef key="teidata.enumerated"/>
>
</content>
```

## Declaration

```
tei_teidata.gender = teidata.enumerat  
ed
```

## Note

Values for attributes using this datatype may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.

Values for this datatype should not be used to encode morphological gender (cf. <gen>, *msd* as defined in att.linguistic, and [10.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms](#)).

## teidata.language

**teidata.language** defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [[6.1. Language Identification](#)]

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content>  
<alternate>  
  <dataRef name="language"/>  
  <valList>  
    <valItem ident=""/>  
  </valList>  
</alternate>  
</content>
```

## Declaration

```
tei_teidata.language = xsd:language | (  
  "" )
```

## Note

The values for this attribute are language ‘tags’ as defined in [BCP 47](#). Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.

A ‘language tag’, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or *subtags* separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present,

each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.

**language**

The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at <https://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.

**script**

The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at <https://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html>. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.

**region**

Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at <https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/>. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/method>

<s/m49/m49.htm>.

**variant**

An IANA-registered variation. These codes 'are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags'.

**extension**

An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. There are currently only two extensions in use. Extension T indicates that the content was transformed. For example *en-t-it* could be used for content in English that was translated from Italian. Extension T is described in the informational [RFC 6497](#). Extension U can be used to embed a variety of locale attributes. It is described in the informational [RFC 6067](#).

**private use**

An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter x (i.e., starts with x-) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding <language> element must be present in the TEI header.

There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the [IANA registry](#) that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been 'grandfathered' from previous specifications.

Second, an entire language tag can

consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with x-, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <language> element in the TEI header.

Examples include

***sn***

Shona

***zh-TW***

Taiwanese

***zh-Hant-HK***

Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong

***en-SL***

English as spoken in Sierra Leone

***pl***

Polish

***es-MX***

Spanish as spoken in Mexico

***es-419***

Spanish as spoken in Latin America

The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, [Language tags in HTML and XML](#).

## **teidata.name**

**teidata.name** defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="Name"/>
</content>
```

## **Declaration**

tei\_teidata.name = xsd:Name

**Note**

Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows

the rules defining a legal XML name (see <https://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.

## **teidata.numeric**

**teidata.numeric** defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="double"/>
    <dataRef name="token"
      restriction="(\-?[\d]+\^-?[\d]+)"/>
    <dataRef name="decimal"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

## **Declaration**

```
tei teidata.numeric =
  xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+\\^-?[\\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

## **Note**

Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio.

To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, 'E notation', a variant of 'exponential notation', may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.

A value expressed as a ratio is



represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2.

## **teidata.outputMeasurement**

**teidata.outputMeasurement** defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[\-+]?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?(%|cm|
mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|ch|rem|vw|vh|
vmin|vmax)"/>
</content>
```

## **Declaration**

```
tei_teidata.outputMeasurement =
  token
  {
    pattern = "[\-+]?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?(%|cm|
mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|ch|rem|vw|vh|
vmin|vmax)"
  }
```

## **Example**

```
<figure>
  <head>The TEI Logo</head>
  <figDesc>Stylized yellow angle brack
ets with the letters <mentioned>TEI</
mentioned> in
  between and <mentioned>text enco
ding initiative</mentioned> underneat
h, all on a white
  background.</figDesc>
  <graphic height="600px"
    url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-
600.jpg" width="600px"/>
</figure>
```

## **Note**

These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the [CSS3 working draft](#).

## teidata.pattern

**teidata.pattern** defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"/>
</content>
```

### Declaration

```
tei teidata.pattern = token
```

**Note**

[Wikipedia](#)

This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema.

## teidata.pointer

**teidata.pointer** defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

Element:

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="anyURI" restriction
    ="\S+"/>
</content>
```

### Declaration

```
tei teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI { pattern = "\S+" }
```

**Note**

The range of syntactically valid values is defined by [RFC 3986 Uniform Resource Identifier \(URI\): Generic Syntax](#). Note that the values themselves are encoded using [RFC 3987 Internationalized Resource Identifiers \(IRIs\) mapping to URIs](#). For example,  
<https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia>

/en/wiki/% is encoded as  
 https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia  
 /en/wiki/%25 while http://-موقع.وزارة-  
 /الاتصالات.مصر is encoded as http://xn--  
 4gbrim.xn----  
 rmckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/

## teidata.probCert

**teidata.probCert** defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value.

**Module** tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef key="teidata.probability"/>
    <dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

## Declaration

```
tei_teidata.probCert = teidata.probabil
ity | teidata.certainty
```

## teidata.probability

**teidata.probability** defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.

**Module** tei

**Used by** teidata.probCert

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="double">
    <dataFacet name="minInclusive" val
ue="0"/>
    <dataFacet name="maxInclusive" val
ue="1"/>
  </dataRef>
</content>
```

## Declaration

### Note

```
tei_teidata.probability = xsd:double
Probability is expressed as a real
number between 0 and 1; 0
representing certainly false and 1
representing certainly true.
```

## teidata.replacement

**teidata.replacement** defines attribute values which contain a replacement template.

**Module** tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <textNode/>
</content>
```

### Declaration

tei\_teidata.replacement = text

## teidata.sex

**teidata.sex** defines the range of attribute values used to identify the sex of an organism.

**Module** tei

**Used by** Element:

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <dataRef key="teidata.enumerated"/>
>
</content>
```

### Declaration

#### Note

tei\_teidata.sex = teidata.enumerated  
Values for attributes using this datatype may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.

## teidata.temporal.iso

**teidata.temporal.iso** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the international standard *Data elements and interchange formats - Information interchange - Representation of dates and times*.

**Module** tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="date"/>
    <dataRef name="gYear"/>
    <dataRef name="gMonth"/>
    <dataRef name="gDay"/>
    <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

```

<dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>
<dataRef name="time"/>
<dataRef name="dateTime"/>
<dataRef name="token"
  restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/;
+\\-]+"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

## Declaration

```

tei_teidata.temporal.iso =
  xsd:date
  | xsd:gYear
  | xsd:gMonth
  | xsd:gDay
  | xsd:gYearMonth
  | xsd:gMonthDay
  | xsd:time
  | xsd:dateTime
  | token { pattern = "[0-
9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/;+\\-]+" }

```

## Note

If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the `dateTime` representation should be used.

For all representations for which ISO 8601:2004 describes both a *basic* and an *extended* format, these Guidelines recommend use of the extended format.

## teidata.temporal.w3c

**teidata.temporal.w3c** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition specification.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```

<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="date"/>
    <dataRef name="gYear"/>
    <dataRef name="gMonth"/>
    <dataRef name="gDay"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

```

<dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>
<dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>
<dataRef name="time"/>
<dataRef name="dateTime"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

## Declaration

```

tei_teidata.temporal.w3c =
  xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime

```

## Note

If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the `dateTime` representation should be used.

## teidata.text

**teidata.text** defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of Unicode characters possibly including whitespace.

### Module

tei

### Used by

### Content model

```

<content>
  <dataRef name="string"/>
</content>

```

## Declaration

## Note

`tei_teidata.text = string`  
 Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'token' in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

## teidata.truthValue

**teidata.truthValue** defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.

### Module

tei

### Used by

Element:

## Content model

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="boolean"/>
</content>
```

## Declaration

### Note

tei\_teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean  
The possible values of this datatype are *1* or *true*, or *0* or *false*.

This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. *unknown*, or *inapplicable*, it should have the extended version of this datatype: teidata.xTruthValue.

## teidata.version

**teidata.version** defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number.

### Module

tei

### Used by

Element:

### Content model

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="\d+(\.\\d+){0,2}"/>
</content>
```

## Declaration

### Note

tei\_teidata.version = token { pattern =  
 "[\d]+(\.\\d+){0,2}" }

The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (<https://unicode.org/versions/>). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied.

## teidata.versionNumber

**teidata.versionNumber** defines the range of attribute values used for

version numbers.

**Module**

**Used by**

**Content model**

tei

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-
z]*[\d]*){0,3}"/>
</content>
```

**Declaration**

```
tei teidata.versionNumber =
  token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[
\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" }
```

## **teidata.word**

**teidata.word** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.

**Module**

**Used by**

**Content model**

tei

teidata.enumerated

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="^[^p{C}\p{Z}]+"/>
</content>
```

**Declaration**

```
tei teidata.word = token { pattern = "[
^p{C}\p{Z}]+"
```

**Note**

Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'word' which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

## **teidata.xTruthValue**

**teidata.xTruthValue** (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown.

**Module**

**Used by**

**Content model**

tei

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="boolean"/>
  <valList>
    <valItem ident="unknown"/>
```



```

        <valItem ident="inapplicable"/>
    </valList>
</alternate>
</content>

```

## Declaration

```

tei_teidata.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean |
( "unknown" | "inapplicable" )

```

## Note

In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype `teidata.TruthValue`.

## teidata.xpath

**teidata.xpath** defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression.

### Module

tei

### Used by

### Content model

```

<content>
  <textNode/>
</content>

```

## Declaration

```

tei_teidata.xpath = text

```

## Note

Any XPath expression using the syntax defined in [6.2.](#)

When writing programs that evaluate XPath expressions, programmers should be mindful of the possibility of malicious code injection attacks. For further information about XPath injection attacks, see the [article at OWASP](#).